

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



ŠKODA Octavia Owner's Manual



Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index

The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement

All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

-  Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
-  Denotes the end of a section.
-  Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
-  Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
-  Denotes a registered trademark.
-  Denotes the display in the information display.
-  Denotes the display in the segment display.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.



For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.



Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

Preface

Does not apply to Russia

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

Observe the national legal requirements when using your vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We wish you much pleasure with your ŠKODA and pleasant motoring at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to as ŠKODA)



The on-board literature

The on-board literature for your vehicle consists of this "**Owner's Manual**" as well as a "**Service schedule**" and the "**Help on the road**" brochure.

Depending on the vehicle model and equipment, other additional operating manuals and instructions may be provided (e.g. an operating manual for the Infotainment Radio).

If one of the publications listed above is missing, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The Owner's Manual

These operating instructions describe **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, this vehicle does **not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's manual.

The level of equipment of your vehicle refers to your purchase contract of the vehicle. For more information, contact your local ŠKODA retailer.

This owner's manual describes a wide range of electronic functions and systems. Information about how to configure these electronic functions and systems can be found in the operating instructions to Infotainment Radio and/or the Infotainment navigation system.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

The Service Schedule:

- includes vehicle data including information on service work performed;
- is a record of services provided;
- is provided for entries relating to the mobility warranty (valid only for some countries);
- serves as warranty certificate of the ŠKODA dealer.

The service records are one of the conditions for warranty claims.

Please always present the Service schedule when you take your car to a ŠKODA specialist garage.

If the Service Schedule is missing or worn, please contact the ŠKODA specialist garage that regularly services your car. You will receive a duplicate, in which the previously carried out service work is confirmed by the ŠKODA specialist garage.

The Help on the Road brochure

The brochure contains the important emergency telephone numbers as well as telephone numbers and contact addresses of ŠKODA Partners in different countries.

Table of Contents

Abbreviations

Using the system

Cockpit	7
Overview	6
Instruments and warning lights	8
Instrument cluster	8
Warning lights	12
Warning icons in the display	18
Information system	23
Driver information system	23
Driving data (multifunction display)	25
Unlocking and opening	29
Unlocking and locking	29
KESSY	34
Anti-theft alarm system	35
Luggage compartment lid	37
Electric boot lid (Octavia Estate)	38
Electrical power windows	41
Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia)	43
Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate)	45
Lights and visibility	47
Lights	47
Interior light	54
Visibility	56
Windscreen wipers and washers	58
Rear mirror	60
Seats and useful equipment	63
Adjusting the seats	63
Seat features	67
Useful equipment	70

Luggage compartment	79
Variable loading floor in luggage compartment	88
Net partition (Octavia Estate)	90
Roof rack system	92

Heating and air conditioning system	95
Heating, ventilation, cooling	95
Heating	97
Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)	99
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)	101
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	104

Communication and multimedia	107
Communication	107
Multimedia	109

Driving

Starting-off and Driving	112
Steering	112
Starting and stopping the engine with the key	113
Starting and stopping the engine - KESSY	115
Brakes	118
Manual shifting of gears and pedals	120
Automatic transmission	120
Running in	124
Economical and environmentally friendly driving	125
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	129
Driving abroad	130
Assist systems	131
Brake assist systems	131
Parking aid	133
Park assist	135
Cruise control system	139
START-STOP	141

Driving mode	143
ProActive passenger protection	145
Lane Assist	146
Traffic sign recognition	149
Fatigue detection (break recommendation)	151

Towing a trailer	152
Towing device	152
Trailer	155

Safety

Passive Safety	158
General information	158
Proper seated position	159

Seat belts	162
Using seat belts	162
Inertia reel and belt pretensioners	165

Airbag system	167
Description of the airbag system	167
Airbag overview	168
Deactivating airbags	172

Pedestrian protection	175
Pedestrian protection system	175

Transporting children safely	177
Child seat	177
Fastening elements	180

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle	182
Taking care of your vehicle	182
Accessories, changes and replacement of parts	188

Inspecting and replenishing	191
Fuel	191
Engine compartment	193

Engine oil	197
Coolant	199
Brake fluid	201
Vehicle battery	202
Wheels	207
Wheels and tyres	207
Operation in winter	212

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help	214
Emergency equipment	214
Changing a wheel	216
Tyre repair	219
Jump-starting	222
Towing the vehicle	223
Remote control	225
Emergency unlocking/locking	226
Replacing windscreen wiper blades	228
Fuses and light bulbs	230
Fuses	230
Light bulbs	234

Technical data

Technical data	241
Vehicle data	241

Index

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
TCS	Traction control
CO ₂ in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometre
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MG	Manual gearbox
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

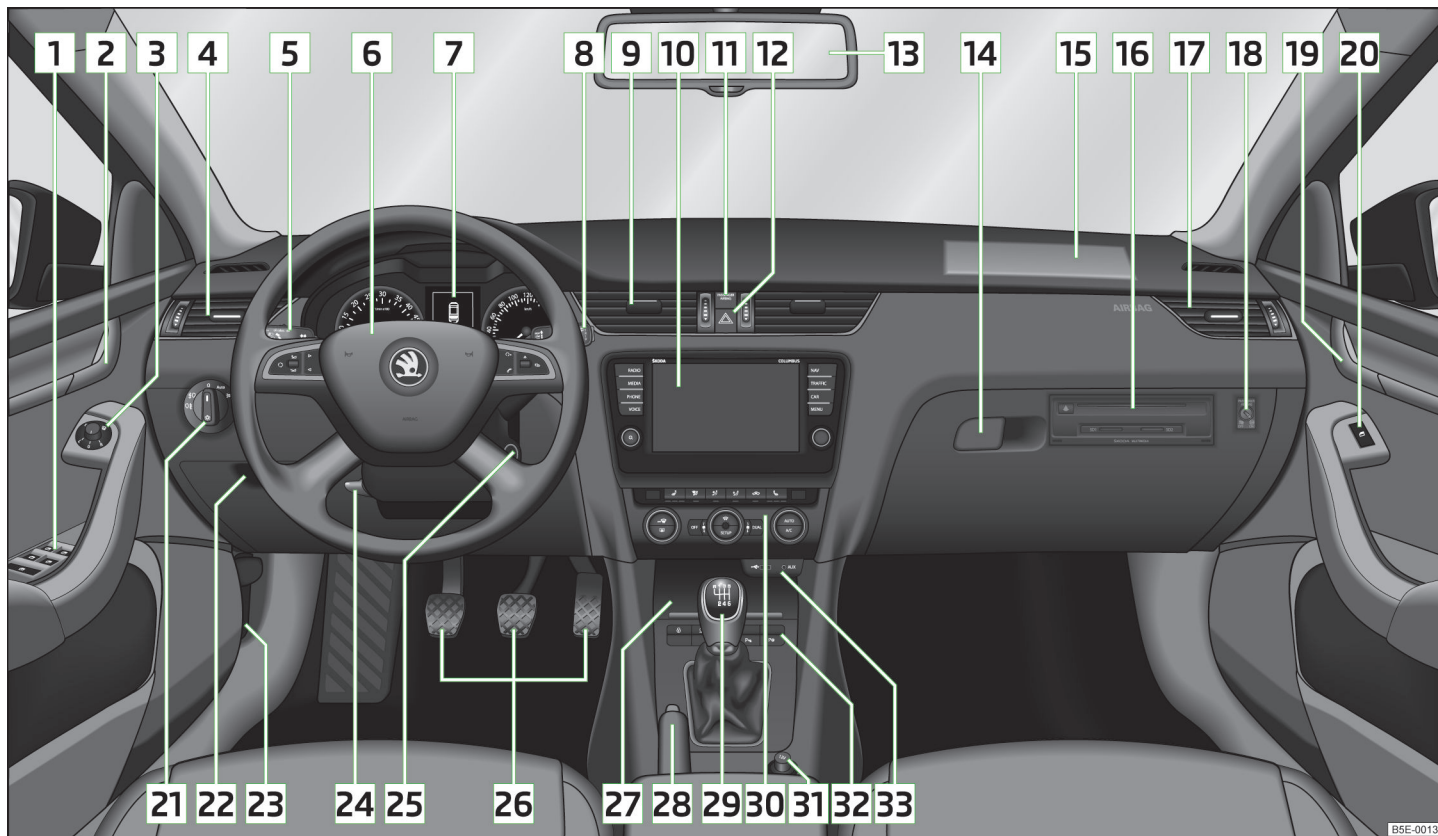


Fig. 1 Cockpit

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1	Electrical power windows	41	19	Door opening lever on the front passenger side	34
2	Door opening lever on the driver's side	34	20	Power window in the front passenger door	42
3	Electric exterior mirror adjustment	61	21	Light switch	48
4	Air outlet vent on the driver's side	96	22	Storage compartment on the driver's side	71
5	Operating lever: > Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher > Speed regulating system	49 139		Fuse box (behind the storage compartment on the driver's side) ..	231
6	Steering wheel: > With horn > With driver's front airbag	169	23	Bonnet release lever	195
	> With buttons for the Infotainment system	107	24	Lever for adjusting the steering wheel	113
7	Instrument cluster	8	25	Ignition lock	114
8	Operating lever: > Windscreen wiper and wash system	58	26	Pedals	120
	> Multifunction display	25	27	Storage compartment	72
	> Information display	24	28	Handbrake lever	119
9	Air outlets in the middle part of the dash panel	96	29	Depending on equipment fitted: > Gearshift lever (manual gearbox)	120
10	Infotainment » <i>owner's manual for the Infotainment radio or navigation</i>			> Selector lever (automatic gearbox)	121
11	Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag	173	30	Depending on equipment fitted: > Operating controls for the heating	97
12	Switch for hazard warning lights	53		> Operating controls for the air conditioning system	99
13	Interior rear-view mirror	61		> Operating controls for Climatronic	101
14	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	75	31	Depending on equipment fitted: > 12-Volt power socket	74
15	Front passenger airbag	169		> Cigarette lighter	73
16	CD/DVD drive and memory card slot (in the passenger-side storage compartment) » <i>owner's manual for the Infotainment radio and/or navigation</i>		32	Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted: > Central locking system	33
17	Air outlet vent on the front passenger side	96		> START STOP	141
18	Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment)	173		> Traction control TCS	132
				> Electronic Stability Control ESC	131
				> Selection of driving mode	143
				> Park Assist	135
				> Parking aid	133
				> Tyre inflation pressure calibration	210
			33	Depending on equipment fitted: > USB/AUX input	107
				> MEDIA IN input	107

Note

The arrangement of the controls and switches and the location of some items on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 1. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview	8
Revolutions counter	9
Display	9
Speedometer	9
Coolant temperature display	10
Fuel gauge	10
Counter for distance driven	11
Setting the time	11
Viewing the charge level vehicle battery	11
Service interval display	11
Auto-check control	12

Component protection

If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » [page 189](#), *Component protection*.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

! Error: Instrument cluster. Workshop!

8 COMBIINSTRUM_WORKSHOP

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Never operate the button **6** in the instrument cluster » [Fig. 2](#) on [page 8](#) while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview

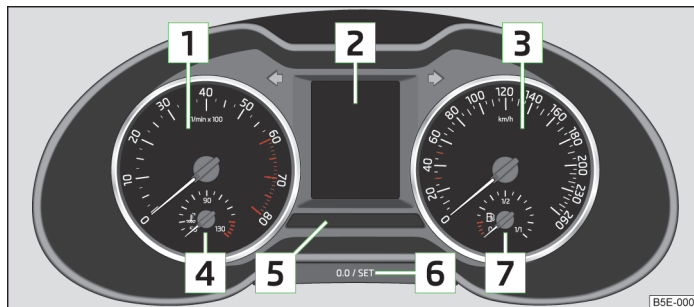


Fig. 2 Instrument cluster

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 8](#).

- 1** Revolutions counter with warning lights » [page 9](#)
- 2** Display » [page 9](#)
 - With counter for distance driven » [page 11](#)
 - With service interval display » [page 11](#)
 - With digital clock » [page 11](#)
 - With information system » [page 23](#)
 - With control symbols » [page 18](#)
- 3** Speedometer¹⁾ with warning lights » [page 9](#)
- 4** Coolant temperature gauge » [page 10](#)

¹⁾ During the journey, the speed can be displayed in a different unit (mph or km/h) in addition to the tachometer display.

- 5 Bar with warning lights » page 12
- 6 Button for:
 - Set hours/minutes » page 11
 - Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 11
 - Resetting Service Interval Display » page 11
 - Reset trip counter for the distance driven » page 11
 - Charge level indicator » page 11
- 7 Fuel gauge » page 10

Revolutions counter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 8.

The red scale of the rev counter **1** » Fig. 2 on page 8 indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next higher gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 23.



For the sake of the environment

Correct shifting up has the following advantages.

- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Display

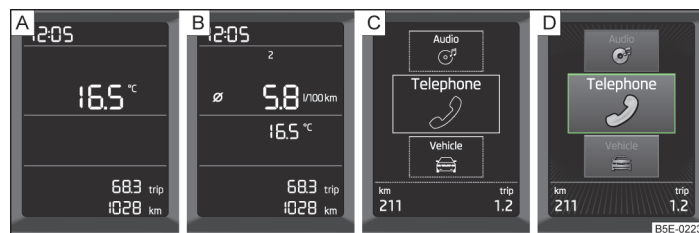


Fig. 3 Display types



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 8.

The instrument cluster can have one of the following types of display » Fig. 3.

- A Segment display without multi function display
- B Segment display with multi-function display
- C Monochromatic information display
- D Colour information display

Speedometer



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 8.

Warning against excessive speeds

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h¹⁾. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

¹⁾ This function only applies to certain countries.

Coolant temperature display



Fig. 4
Coolant temperature gauge



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 8.

The coolant temperature display » Fig. 4 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale it means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 19.



CAUTION

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.

Fuel gauge

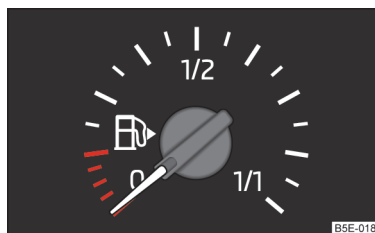


Fig. 5
Fuel gauge



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 8.

The fuel gauge » Fig. 5 only operates if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 50 litres. If the pointer reaches the reserve marking (red area of the scale), the control indicator  » page 21 lights up.



CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and exhaust system.



Note

The arrow ► next to the icon  within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

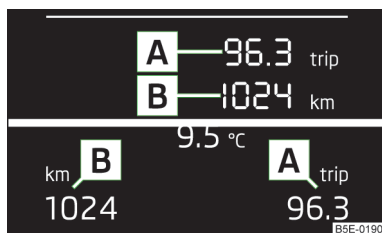


Fig. 6
Segment display/information
display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 8.

Daily trip counter (trip)

The daily trip counter » Fig. 6 shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 100 m.

Reset trip counter for the distance driven

» Briefly press the button » Fig. 2 on page 8.

Odometer

The odometer » Fig. 6 indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Setting the time

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 8.

- » Switch on the ignition.
- » Press and hold the button » Fig. 2 on page 8 until the **Time** is shown in the display.
- » Release the button and the system switches to the time setting function.
- » Press the button again and set the hours.
- » Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
- » Press the button again and set the minutes.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Unit setup*.

Viewing the charge level vehicle battery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 8.

- » Switch off the ignition.
- » Press and hold the button » Fig. 9 on page 26 until the **Battery status** or **BATTERY** is shown in the display.
- » Release the button - the current charge level of the vehicle battery is displayed in %.

Service interval display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 8.

Service message

Before reaching the service interval, the icon appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message.

Service in ... km or ... day(s).

SERVICE IN... km OR ... DAYS

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

Once the service interval is reached, the icon appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message.

Service now!

SERVICE NOW

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

- » Switch on the ignition.
- » Press the button » Fig. 2 on page 8 and keep it pressed down until **Service** appears.
- » Release the button .

The icon appears in the display together with the message.

Service in ... km or ... day(s).

SERVICE IN... km OR ... DAYS

Resetting Service Interval Display

If the variable service interval is set in your vehicle and if the service interval display is reset, the variable service interval is switched to the fixed service interval. Only the "Oil Change Service" indication is reset, the "Inspection" indication is not reset.

We therefore recommend that the Service Interval Display be reset only by a ŠKODA Partner, who will reset the display with a vehicle system tester.

The ŠKODA Partner will carry out the following steps.

- He resets the display memory after the relevant inspection.
- He makes an entry in the service schedule.
- He affixes a sticker with the entry of the following service interval to the side of the dash panel on the driver's side.

The reset can be done with the button **6** » Fig. 2 on page 8.

- Switch off the ignition (for vehicles with the KESSY system, also close the driver's door).
- Press the button **6** and keep it pressed down.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Release and then press again the button **6**.

CAUTION

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. We recommend having this work undertaken by a ŠKODA Partner.
- For more information on the service intervals » *service schedule*, chapter *service intervals*.

Auto-check control



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **! on page 8.**

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Error messages and/or other information are displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Some messages are displayed simultaneously with the warning lights » [page 12](#) or warning icons in the display » [page 18](#).

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols or continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Symbol	Description
	Warning
	Danger

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 53](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Warning lights



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Clutches of the automatic gearbox too hot 13
- Handbrake 13
- Brake system 14
- Front seat belt warning light 14
- Power steering 14
- Traction control system (TCS) 14 ▶

 Traction control system (TCS) off	15
 Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	15
 Antilock brake system (ABS)	15
 Rear fog light	16
 Exhaust inspection system	16
 Glow plug system (diesel engine)	16
 Engine performance check (petrol engine)	16
 Safety systems	16
 Tyre inflation pressure	17
 Brake pad thickness	17
 Lane following system (Lane Assist)	17
 Turn signal system	17
 Trailer turn signal lights	17
 Fog lights	18
 Cruise control system	18
 Selector lever lock	18
 Main beam	18

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

The condition of some features and systems is shown by the warning icons on the display » [page 18](#).

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster » [Fig. 2](#) on [page 8](#).

- Revolutions counter [1](#)
- Speedometer [3](#)
- Bar with warning lights [5](#)

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 53](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 193, Engine compartment](#).

Clutches of the automatic gearbox too hot

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 12](#).

The warning light  lights up if the temperature of the clutches of the automatic gearbox is too high.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!
-  STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the light  goes out - risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the light goes out. ■

Handbrake

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 12](#).

The warning light  comes on if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  Release the handbrake!
-  RELEASE HANDBRAKE

Brake system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  lights up, the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Brake fluid: owner's manual!**

 **BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK**

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » [page 201](#) » .

If the warning light  lights up together with the warning light , there is a problem with the ABS.

WARNING

- If the warning light  is displayed simultaneously with warning light  » [page 15](#),  *Antilock brake system (ABS)*,  **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

Front seat belt warning light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning light  comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt.

The warning light  goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened their seat belt.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, the warning light  flashes and you will hear an acoustic signal.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light  lights up permanently.

Further information » [page 162](#), *Seat belts*.



Power steering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  lights up, this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

If the warning light  lights up, this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces). Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Further information » [page 113](#).



Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. The warning light should go out after driving a short distance. If after a new engine start and a short ride the yellow warning light  does not go out, seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.



Traction control system (TCS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC » [page 131](#).

The warning light flashes  to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: traction control**

 **ASR ERROR**

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the warning light  does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the TCS is fully functional again.

Further information » [page 131](#) and » [page 132](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Traction control system (TCS) off

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  is lit, the TCS is off.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Traction control (ASR) deactivated.**

 **ASR OFF**

Further information » [page 132](#), *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

A flashing warning light  shows that the ESC system is currently operating.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the ESC system.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: stabilisation control (ESC)**

 **ESC ERROR**

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the ESC system may be switched off for technical reasons.

» Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ESC system is fully functional again.

Further information » [page 131](#), *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Error: ABS**

 **ABS ERROR**

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Further information » [page 132](#), *Antilock Braking System (ABS)*.

WARNING

- If the warning light  is displayed simultaneously with warning light , , **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning light  comes on when the rear fog light is switched on.

Further information » [page 52](#).

Exhaust inspection system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light  **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light  begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.



Safety systems



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  lights up, there is a fault in the airbag or pedestrian protection system.

Airbag system

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Error: Airbag**
-  **AIRBAG ERROR**

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored automatically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

- The warning light  lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.
- The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.**
-  **AIRBAG/BELT TENSIONER OFF**

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

- The warning light  comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The warning light **OFF** in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF** in the middle of the dash panel lights up after switching on the ignition » [page 173](#).

Passenger protection system

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Error: pedestrian protection**
-  **PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION ERROR**

Further information » [page 175](#).

WARNING

If there is a fault in the safety system, have it checked immediately by a ŠKODA specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the systems not being activated in the event of an accident.

Tyre inflation pressure



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning light  **lights up**, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » [page 207](#).

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

If the warning light  **flashes**, there is a fault in the system.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Further information » [page 210](#), *Tyre control display*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light  comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means there is an error in the system. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Brake pad thickness



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the indicator light  is lit, the brake pads are worn.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Check brake wear!**

 **BRAKE PADS PLEASE CHECK**

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Lane following system (Lane Assist)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning lights   indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

Further information » [page 146](#).



Turn signal system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

Either the left  or right  indicator light flashes depending on the position of the control lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Further information » [page 49](#), *Turn signal and main beam*.



Trailer turn signal lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  flashes, the trailer turn signal lights are turned on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light  is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

 **Trailer: check left turn signal!**

 **TRAILER TURN SIG_ CHECK LEFT**

The trailer must be unhitched properly » [page 152](#), *Towing a trailer*.

Fog lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning light  comes on when the fog lights are operating.

Further information » [page 52](#).

Cruise control system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning light  comes on when the cruise control is active.

Further information » [page 139](#).

Selector lever lock



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

If the warning light  lights up, operate the brake pedal.

Further information » [page 121](#).

Main beam



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 12.

The warning light  comes on when the main beam is selected or when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information » [page 49](#).

Warning icons in the display



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

■	 Rear seat belt warning	19
	 Alternator	19
	 Coolant	19
	 Engine oil pressure	20
	 Engine oil level	20
	 Bulb failure	20
	 Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)	21
	 Windscreen washer fluid level	21
■	 Fuel reserve	21
	 Headlight assist	22
	 START-STOP system	22
	 Ice warning	22

The warning icons indicate the status of certain functions or faults.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster » [page 9](#).

After switching on the ignition, some warning icons illuminate briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning icons go out a few seconds after switching on the ignition.

Depending on the meaning of the warning icon, the icon  or  will also light up in the bar with the warning lights [\[5\]](#) » [Fig. 2](#) on page 8.

Some warning icons can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

The status of some features and systems is shown by the warning lights » [page 12](#).

Symbol	Description
	Warning
	Danger

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols  or  continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

On vehicles with a colour information display » [Fig. 3](#) on page 9 - , some warning icons in the display are in colour.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning icons and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » [page 53](#). The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 193](#), *Engine compartment*.

Rear seat belt warning

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

-  A rear seat belt is not fastened
-  A rear seat belt is fastened

The warning icons  or  come on after the ignition has been switched on.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular icon lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Further information » [page 162](#), *Seat belts*.

Alternator

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

The warning icon  lights up if the vehicle battery is not charged when the engine is running.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

CAUTION

If the icon  (cooling system fault) comes on in addition to the icon  when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and switch off the engine - risk of engine damage!

Coolant

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

Coolant level too low

If the coolant level is too low, the warning icon  lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

-  Check coolant! Owner's manual!
-  ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » [page 200](#).
- If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » [page 201](#).
- If, after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, the warning icon  disappears, you can continue your journey.
- If the coolant level is within the specified range, but the warning icon  is still lit, check the fuse for the radiator fan and replace it if necessary » [page 233](#), *Fuses in the engine compartment*.
- If the coolant level and fan fuse are in order, but the warning icon  is still lit,  **do not continue your journey!**
- Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

■ If the coolant temperature is too high, the warning icon  lights up and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

-  Engine overheat. Stop! Owner's manual!
-  ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

- Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- Wait until the coolant temperature gauge pointer returns to the operating range » [page 10](#).
- Continue your journey only after the warning icon  has disappeared.

! WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

Engine oil pressure

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

When the warning icon  flashes, the engine oil pressure is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Oil pressure: Stop! Owner's manual!**
 **STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE**

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » [page 198](#), *Checking the oil level*.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning icon  is flashing! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Engine oil level

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

Engine oil level too low

If the warning icons  and  are lit, the engine oil level is too low.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Oil level: top up oil!**
 **TOP UP OIL**

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » [page 198](#).

The warning icon will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning icon will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

If the warning icons  and  are lit in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level is too high.

-  **Reduce oil level!**
 **OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH**

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » [page 198](#).

Engine oil level sensor

If the warning icons  and  are lit in conjunction with the following message on the display, the engine oil level sensor is defective.

-  **Oil sensor: Workshop!**
 **OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP**

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

! WARNING

Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible  to top up the engine oil under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Bulb failure

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

The warning icon  comes on if a bulb is faulty.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display, for example.

-  **Check right dipped headlight beam!**
 **DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT**

Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning icon  lights up, soot has accumulated in the diesel particulate filter.

To clean the diesel particle filter, and where traffic conditions permit »  drive for at least 15 minutes or until the warning icon  goes out as follows.

- 4th or 5th gear selected (automatic gearbox: Position D/S).
- Vehicle speed at least 60 km/h.
- Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon  goes out.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning icon  does not go out and the warning icon  begins to flash.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Diesel particulate filter: owner's manual!**

 **DIESEL PM FILTER OWNER MANUAL**

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

WARNING

- The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park in areas where the hot filter can come into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials – there is the risk of fire!
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.



CAUTION

- As long as the warning icon  lights up, you must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA specialist garage will be able to tell you which countries use only diesel fuel with high sulphur content.



Note

- We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.



Windscreen washer fluid level



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning icon  comes on.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Top up washer fluid!**

 **WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP**

Top up with liquid » [page 196](#).



Fuel reserve



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

If the warning icon  comes on, there is a fuel reserve of under about 7 litres left.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Please refuel. Range: ... km**

 **PLEASE REFUEL**

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.



Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance. ■



Headlight assist



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

The warning icon  is lit when the headlight assist is activated.

Further information » [page 51](#), *Headlight assist*. ■



START-STOP system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

The warning icons (A)  indicate the state of the START-STOP system.

Further information » [page 141](#). ■



Ice warning



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 18.

The warning icon  draws your attention to the risk of ice.

Further information » [page 23](#). ■

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on the display	23
Outside temperature	23
Recommended gear	23
Door, boot or bonnet warning	24
Eco tips	24
Information display	24 ■

Information on the display



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 23.

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems. These alerts and messages appear in the display of the instrument cluster **2** » Fig. 2 on page 8 (hereafter only in the display).

The information system provides the following information.

- » Outside temperature » page 23.
- » Recommended gear » page 23.
- » Door, boot lid and bonnet warning » page 24.
- » Eco tips » page 24.
- » Service interval display » page 11.
- » Auto Check Control » page 12.
- » Warning icons » page 18.
- » Driving data (multifunction display) » page 25.
- » Warning against excessive speeds » page 27.
- » Details of the information display » page 24.
- » Traffic sign recognition » page 149.
- » Fatigue detection » page 151.
- » Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 121.
- » Information and alerts in the Assist systems » page 131.

Outside temperature



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 23.

The current outside temperature is shown in the display.

If the outside temperature drops below +4 °C while driving, the following symbol ❄ (warning signal for ice on the road) appears before the temperature indicator and an audible signal will sound.

If the outside temperature is less than +4 °C when the ignition is turned on, the following symbol ❄ appears in the display and an acoustic signal sounds.

After pressing the rocker switch **A** or the adjustment wheel **D** » Fig. 9 on page 26, the function shown last is indicated.



WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Recommended gear

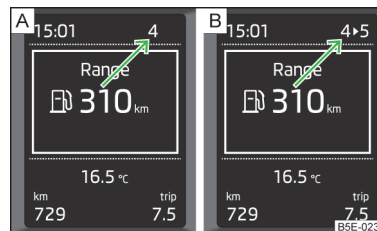


Fig. 7
Recommended gear



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 23.

In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

■ Information about the currently-selected gear is shown in the upper part of the display » Fig. 7 - **A**.

When the system determines that a change in gear is required, the arrow symbol ► and the recommended gear appear next to the current gear indication » Fig. 7 - B.

For instance, if 4 ► 5 appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 4th into 5th. gear.

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Door, boot or bonnet warning



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 23.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h.

Eco tips



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 23.

To minimise fuel consumption, fuel economy tips can appear in the display.

Eco tips are indicated next to the letters **ECO-TIP**.

For instance, if the air-condition is on and a window is open, the following message appears **ECO TIP Air conditioning switched on: close windows**.

Eco tips display must be activated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

Information display

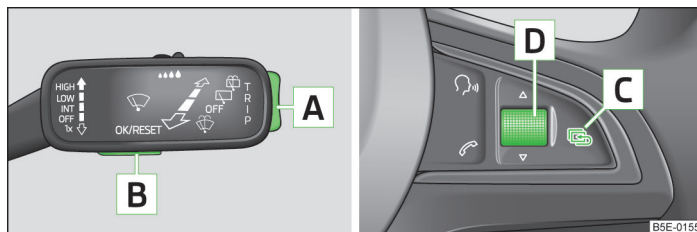


Fig. 8 Buttons (adjustment wheel) on the operating lever/multifunction steering wheel



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 23.

The information display provides you with information on the **current operating state of your vehicle**. The information display also provides you with data (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle) relating to the Infotainment, multi-functional indicator, etc.

Operating with the buttons on the operating lever

Activate the Main menu by pressing the rocker switch A » Fig. 8 for longer.

Individual menu items can be selected by means of the rocker switch A. When the pushbutton B is briefly pressed, the information you have selected is displayed.

Operating the button/adjustment wheel on the multifunction steering wheel

Activate the Main menu by pressing the rocker switch C » Fig. 8 for longer.

The individual menus can be selected by pressing the adjustment wheel D. The selected menu is displayed after briefly pressing the adjustment wheel D.

By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu points

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle).

- Driving data » page 25
- Assist systems » page 146

- **Navigation** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter *Navigation system* (NAV button)
- **Audio** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter *Media* (MEDIA button)
- **Telephone** » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter *Telephone* (PHONE button)
- **Vehicle** » page 12, Auto-check control

Note

If warning messages are shown in the information display, these messages must be confirmed with the button  on the operating lever or with the adjustment wheel  on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 8 to call up the main menu.

Driving data (multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information overview	25
Select information	26
Memory	27
Warning against excessive speeds	27

The multifunction display only operates if the ignition is switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function displayed is the one which you last selected before switching off the ignition.

Individual menu items can be shown or hidden » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

¹⁾ To set the units for the fuel consumption display » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *Unit setup*.

²⁾ On some models in certain countries, the display appears in --,- kilometres/litres if the vehicle is stationary.

Note

In certain countries the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.

Information overview



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 25.

Range

The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the warning icon  the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the range. The range can increase if you drive in a more fuel-efficient manner.

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption¹⁾ is calculated since the last time the memory was erased » page 27.

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » Fig. 9 on page 26.

After erasing the memory, no fuel consumption data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

The fuel consumption data is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current fuel consumption

You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption¹⁾.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed²⁾.

Oil temperature

If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the temperature lies below 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, — are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds

Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » [page 27](#).

Traffic sign recognition

Up to three detected traffic signs can be indicated in the display with the following information.

- Maximum permissible speed (including additional sign).
- Overtaking prohibited.

Further information » [page 149](#), *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current driving speed

The current speed is identical to the display on the speedometer [\[3\]](#) » [Fig. 2](#) on [page 8](#).

Average speed

The average speed since the memory was last erased is shown in the display in km/hour » [page 27](#).

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » [page 27](#).

After erasing the memory, no average speed data will appear for approx. the first 300 m driven.

The average speed data is updated regularly while you are driving.

Distance travelled

The distance driven since the memory was last erased appears in the display.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » [page 27](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 9999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time

The driving time which has elapsed since the memory was last erased, appears in the display.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time on, at this moment, reset the memory by setting the button to zero » [page 27](#).

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Convenience consumers

The consumption display for the convenience consumers in l/h.

Together with the consumption display, a list of three convenience consumers with the highest consumption is also displayed.

Select information

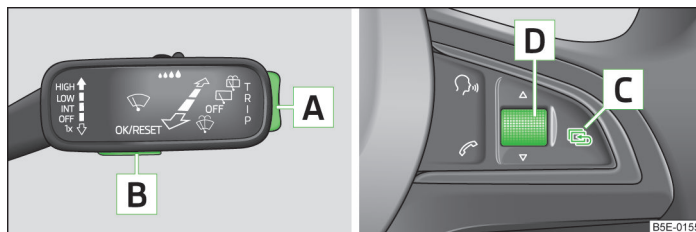


Fig. 9 Buttons (adjustment wheel) on the operating lever/multifunction steering wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings [!](#) on [page 25](#).

Selecting using the operating lever

- Briefly press the rocker switch [\[A\]](#) » [Fig. 9](#) up or down.

Selecting using the multifunction steering wheel

- Turn the adjustment wheel [\[D\]](#) » [Fig. 9](#) upwards or downwards.

Memory



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 25.

The multifunction display is equipped with three automatic memories.

Select memory

➤ Press the button **B** or the adjustment wheel **D** » Fig. 9 on page 26 briefly.

Resetting

➤ Select the desired memory.

➤ Press longer on the button **B** or adjustment wheel **D** » Fig. 9 on page 26.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance driven.
- Average speed.
- Driving time

Since start

The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term

The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9999 kilometres driven.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Since refuel

The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.



Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Warning against excessive speeds

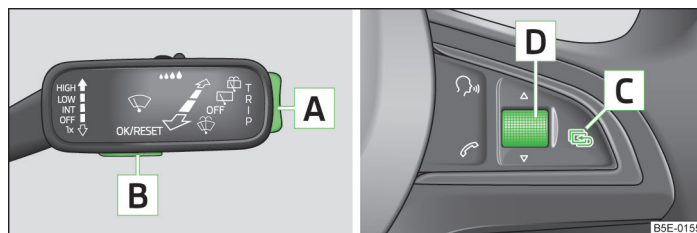


Fig. 10 Buttons (adjustment wheel) on the operating lever/multifunction steering wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 25.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

- With the button **A** » Fig. 10 or, if applicable, the adjustment wheel **D**, select the menu item **Warning against excessive speeds**.
- Pressing the button **B** or the adjustment wheel **D** activates the setup mode for the speed limit.
- Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h, with the button **A** or, if applicable, the adjustment wheel **D**.
- Confirm the speed limit by pressing button **B**, or adjustment wheel **D** or wait around 5 seconds. Your settings are saved automatically.

This allows you to set the speed in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

- With the button **A** » Fig. 10 or, if applicable, the adjustment wheel **D**, select the menu item **Warning against excessive speeds**.
- Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
- Press the button **B** or the adjustment wheel **D** to accept the current speed as the speed limit (the value flashes).

If you wish to change the set speed limit, it is changed in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

- Press again the button **B** or the adjustment wheel **D** to confirm the speed limit, or wait approx. 5 seconds and the setting is saved automatically (the value stops flashing).

Change or delete speed limit

- With the button **A** » Fig. 10 or, if applicable, the adjustment wheel **D**, select the menu item **Warning against excessive speeds**.
- Pressing the button **B** or the adjustment wheel **D** deletes the speed limit.
- Pressing the button **B** or the adjustment wheel **D** again activates change mode for the speed limit.

If the pre-set speed is exceeded, an acoustic signal appears as a warning tone and a warning message appears in the display, e.g.

I Speed 50 exceeded.

S SPEED TOO HIGH

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deleted. ■

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle key	30
Unlocking/locking with the key	30
Unlocking/locking with the remote control	31
Unlocking/locking - KESSY	31
Safe securing system	32
Individual settings	32
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside	33
Child safety lock	34
Opening/closing a door	34

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid at the same time based on the current setting.

The safe securing system » [page 32](#) is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » .

The following is true after unlocking.

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- The switched on interior lights come on over the door contact.
- The safe securing system is switched off.
- The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

The following is true after locking.

- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- The switched on interior lights go out over the door contact.
- The safe securing system is switched on.
- The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Displaying an error

If the indicator light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a ŠKODA specialist garage.



WARNING

- If the car is locked and the safe securing system is activated, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!
- Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings. Locked doors do, however, make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!



Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked using the key if the central locking system fails » [page 30](#). The other doors and the boot lid can be emergency locked or unlocked.
- Emergency locking of the door » [page 227](#).
- Emergency unlocking of the luggage compartment lid » [page 227](#).

Vehicle key

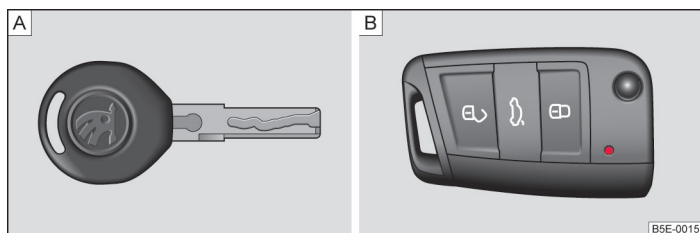


Fig. 11 Key: without/with remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 29.

Two keys are provided with the vehicle » Fig. 11.

- A** Keys without remote control
- B** Keys with remote control (remote control keys)

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle. The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The remote control key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

The spare key must be initialised by a ŠKODA partner after the receiver unit is repaired or replaced. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle – even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. The children might otherwise start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop! The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 225.

Note

Please contact a ŠKODA Partner if you lose a key as they can obtain a new one for you.

Unlocking/locking with the key

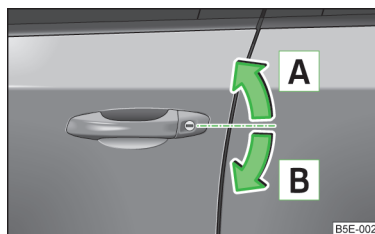


Fig. 12
Turning the key for unlocking
and locking the vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 29.

Unlocking

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of arrow **A** » Fig. 12.

On vehicles with remote control, only the driver's door is unlocked.

Locking

- Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of arrow **B** » Fig. 12.

If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control

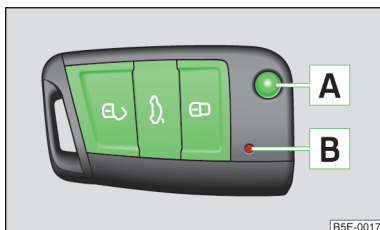


Fig. 13
Remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 29.

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the boot lid
- Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- Warning light

Unlocking

The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

The seat and mirror are adjusted after the vehicle is unlocked » page 66.

Locking

The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

The current position of the seat and mirror after the vehicle is locked » page 66.

■ Checking the battery condition

The battery is empty if the red warning icon » Fig. 13 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key. Replace the battery » page 225.

WARNING

If the car is locked from the outside and the safelock system is switched on, there must not be any person in the car as it is then not possible to open either a door or a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk of death!

CAUTION

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and luggage compartment lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.

Unlocking/locking – KESSY

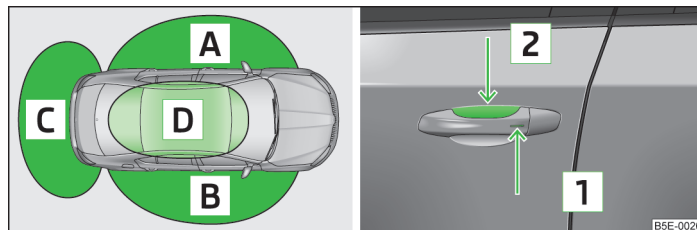


Fig. 14 KESSY: Name of the zones and unlocking/sensors in the handle of the front door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 29.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key. The key must be located at a maximum distance of about 1.5 m from the unlocking or locking area » Fig. 14.

Unlocking

➤ Grab the door handle of the front door or cover the sensor **2** » Fig. 14 with the whole palm of your hand » **1**.

Locking

➤ Touch the sensor **1** » Fig. 14 with your fingers.

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

Unlocking the boot lid

➤ Press the handle of the boot lid » Fig. 19 on page 37.

Switching off the safelock system

➤ Use your fingers to touch the sensor **1** twice within 2 seconds.

Unlocking or locking areas

A Front door left

B Front door right

C Luggage compartment lid

If you cover the sensor **2** at the same time as the sensor **1** » Fig. 14 when unlocking the vehicle, it is not unlocked.

If the vehicle is locked via the sensor **1**, it will not be possible to unlock it again in the following 2 seconds via the sensor **2** - prevents accidental unlocking.

The KESSY system can find the valid key, even if it was left in the front of the vehicle's roof for example **D** » Fig. 14. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

Always check to see whether the vehicle is locked.

Further information about the KESSY system » page 34.

! CAUTION

- Do not use gloves or other objects which might prevent direct contact between the hand and the sensor.
- After leaving the vehicle, it does not lock automatically, the procedure for locking the vehicle must therefore be observed.
- If the battery in the key is weak or discharged, the vehicle may not be unlocked or locked via the KESSY system. In this case, use the emergency unlocking or emergency locking on the driver's door » page 227.

Safe securing system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 29.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. Afterwards, it is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

i Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!

S CHECK SAFELOCK

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching off

The safelock can be switched off by locking twice within 2 seconds.

Switching on

The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-on display

The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch-off display

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Individual settings



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 29.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually » *owner's manual of Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (button CAR)*.

Opening a single door

This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Unlocking the vehicle with the KESY system

This function enables you to unlock all the doors, individual doors, both doors on the left or right vehicle side. The other doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking

All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button @.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 29.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock or lock it with the button » Fig. 15 without the ignition switched on. While a door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Locking

» Press the button @ » Fig. 15.

The symbol @ in the button comes on.

Unlocking

» Press the button @ » Fig. 15.

The symbol @ in the button is no longer illuminated.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.

- » It is not possible to open the doors or the luggage compartment lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
- » The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
- » In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside



Fig. 15
Central locking button



WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.



Note

If the safelock system is switched on » page 32, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not operate.

Child safety lock



Fig. 16
Child safety locks on the rear doors



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 29.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

➤ Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 16 (mirror-inverted on the right doors).

Switching off

➤ Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).

Opening/closing a door



Fig. 17 Door handle/door opening lever: outside/inside



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 29.

Opening from the outside

➤ Unlock the vehicle and pull the handle on the door handle **A** » Fig. 17.

Opening from the inside

➤ Pull the handle on the door opening lever **B**.

Closing from the inside

➤ Grab the pull handle **C** and close the door.



WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

KESSY



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information message	35
Parking vehicle	35

Information message



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 34.

Key in the vehicle

The protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle unlocks the vehicle automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle, including the boot lid, has been locked.
- ✓ The key with which the vehicle has been locked remained in the vehicle in the area **D** » Fig. 14 on page 31.

The turn signal lights flash four times as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked again.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

- i** Key in vehicle.
- S** KEY IN VEHICLE

Additionally, on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system, an audible signal sounds.

The system has not found a key

If the system has not found a key in the vehicle, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

- i** Key not found.
- i** Key not detected. Owner's manual!
- S** NO KEY

This can occur if the key is outside the vehicle, the battery in the key is discharged, the key is defective or the electromagnetic field is strongly disturbed.

Fault in KESSY system

If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

- i** Keyless access system faulty.
- S** KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Low voltage of the key battery

If the voltage of the battery in the remote control key is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

- i** Change the key battery!
- S** KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE

Parking vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 34.

If the vehicle is not unlocked within 60 or 90 seconds, the sensors in the handle of the driver /front passenger's door is deactivated automatically » Fig. 14 on page 31.

Activation after 60 hours

- Unlock the driver's door using the sensor **2** » Fig. 14 on page 31.
- Press the handle of the boot lid.
- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 227.

Activation after 90 hours

- Unlock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Unlocking the driver's door in an emergency » page 227.

Anti-theft alarm system



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating	36
Interior monitor and towing protection	36

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people seeking to break into the vehicle. The system triggers audible and visual warning signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

An alarm is triggered when the following monitored areas of the vehicle have a fault.

- Bonnet.
- Boot lid.
- Doors.
- Ignition lock.
- Vehicle inclination » page 36.
- Interior of car » page 36.
- A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.
- Socket of the factory-fitted towing device » page 156, *Driving with a trailer*.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

The alarm is **switched off** by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Before leaving the car, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are properly closed to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

i Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

Activating

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating

The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 45 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated again.

The alarm system is also deactivated if you unlock the driver door using the key within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

i Note

If the vehicle is unlocked by inserting the key into the driver door, the key must be inserted into the ignition lock and the ignition switched on within 15 seconds of unlocking the door to deactivate the alarm system. The **alarm is triggered** if the ignition is **not switched on** within 15 seconds.

Interior monitor and towing protection

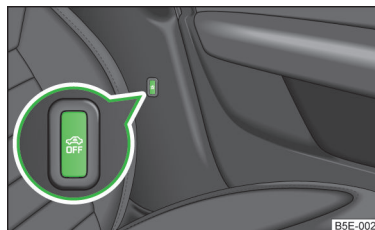


Fig. 18
Button for interior monitor and towing protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 35.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car or the inclination of the vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the driver door.
- Press the symbol button  » Fig. 18 on the B-pillar on the driver's side. The lighting of the symbol  in the button changes from red to orange.
- Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked when the safelock system is activated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements from (e.g. children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION

- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing _____ 37
Automatic locking _____ 38

! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is automatically locked right away as soon as it is closed.

i Note

The function of the handle above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing

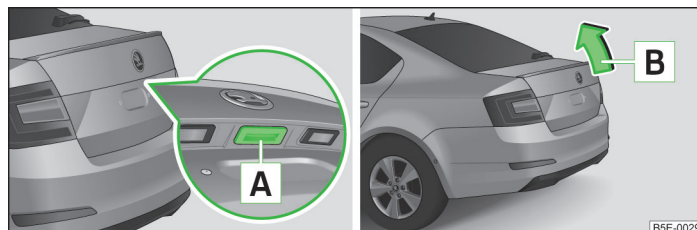


Fig. 19 Handle of boot lid

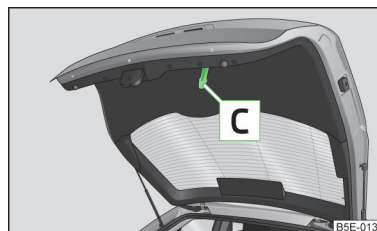


Fig. 20
Handle in the inner panelling of
the boot lid



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 37.

After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the handle above the number plate.

Opening

➤ Press the handle **A** » Fig. 19 and raise the lid in the direction of the arrow **B**.

Closing

► Pull the lid down the handle  » Fig. 20 and close with a slight swing.

Automatic locking



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 37.

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is automatically locked right away as soon as it is closed.

The period after which the boot lid locks automatically can be extended by a ŠKODA Partner.

Delayed locking

If the boot lid was locked with the symbol button  on the remote control key, then it is possible to open the lid within a limited period of it being closed.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. Always lock the vehicle using the symbol button  on the remote control or with the key if no remote control is available » page 30.

The delayed locking can be disabled by a ŠKODA Partner.



Note

More detailed information is available from your authorised ŠKODA Partner.

Electric boot lid (Octavia Estate)



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating description	39
Acoustic signals	40
Adjusting/deleting the top lid position	40
Malfunctions	40

Force limiter

The electric boot lid is fitted with a force limiter. If the lid hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

- If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Manual operation

Manually opening and closing the lid is only possible in exceptional cases, and must be completed slowly and without sudden movements as close to the centre of the lid as possible.

Handling the sides of the lid can damage the electric lid.



WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly when driving even if it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!



CAUTION

- The movement of the lid can be stopped by applying an abrupt and quick force against the lid.
- Do not try to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process. Damage can occur to the system of the electric boot lid.
- If the lid is closed manually, it must be ensured that when moving the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo.



CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- Ensure that there is at least 10 cm of clearance above the opened lid (e.g. distance from the garage ceiling). Otherwise, it may happen that the clearance above the opened lid is no longer sufficient after relieving the vehicle of a load (e.g. after unloading) – risk of causing damage to the lid.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the load on the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.

i Note

If necessary, we recommend that you contact a ŠKODA Partner.

Operating description

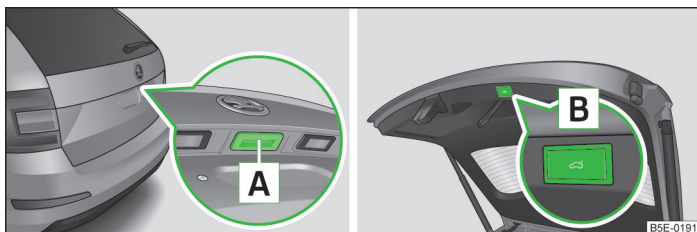


Fig. 21 Lid operation

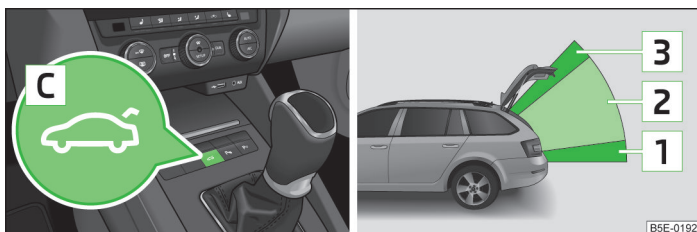


Fig. 22 Lid operation/operating areas

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 38.

Control elements

The lid can be operated with the following control elements.

- With the symbol button on the remote control key (press for about 1 s).
- With the handle **A** on the outer part of the lid » Fig. 21.
- With the button **B** on the inner part of the lid » Fig. 21.
- With the button **C** in the centre console » Fig. 22.

Operating areas

The system distinguishes 3 operating areas where the function of the individual operating elements changes » Fig. 22. The end positions of the lid - fully closed in the secured lock and fully opened - differ as well.

The range of the area **3** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid » page 40.

If the lid is set in the uppermost position in the area **2**, the area **3** is not active. The range of the area **2** changes proportionally, depending on the setting of the top position of the lid.

Symbol explanation in the operating description

- ☒ Feasible action
- ☐ Non-feasible action
- Movement in the opposite direction to the previous movement

Lid operation with the handle **A**

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☒	☒		☐	☐
Stop	☐	☒	☒	☒	☐
Closing	☐	☐		☒	☒

The operation of the lid using the handle **A** is only possible when the vehicle is unlocked.

Lid operation with the button **B**

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
		1	2	3	
Opening	☐	☒		☐	☐
Stop	☐	☒	☒	☒	☐
Closing	☐	☐		☒	☒

Operating the lid with the button **B** is only possible when the lid is open. ►

Lid operation with the symbol button  on the remote control key and the button 

Action	Closed lid	Area			Open lid
					
Opening	☒	☒	☒	☐	☐
Stop	☐	☒	☒	☒	☐
Closing	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

When the ignition is switched on, the operation of the lid does not function using the remote control key.

Operating the lid with the button  does not work if the vehicle was locked from the outside.

Operating the lid with the symbol button  on the remote control key and the button  does not work when a trailer is coupled to the vehicle.

Acoustic signals



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 38.

The acoustic signals serve as a safety function and provide information about the success of a performed action.

Signals	Status
Interrupted tone	Opening (with the button  on the remote control key or with the button  » Fig. 22 on page 39) Automatic closing of the lid » page 38,  in section <i>Introduction</i>
1 continuous tone	Force limiter
3 rising tones	Confirmation of the storage of the lid position
3 identical tones	fault

Adjusting/deleting the top lid position



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 38.

Adjusting

- » Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
- » Press and hold the button  » Fig. 21 on page 39 for longer than 3 seconds.

Storing the new position is confirmed with an audible signal.

Delete

- » Carefully lift up the lid manually to the maximum opening position.
- » Press and hold the button  » Fig. 21 on page 39 for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal sounds and the height which was originally set is deleted from the memory, while the basic position of the top lid position is again set.

The top lid position is adjusted, for example, in the following situations.

- » When the space for opening the lid is limited (e.g. garage height).
- » For a more convenient operation, such as by a person's height.

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

The lid always opens to the height which was last stored.

Malfunctions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 38.

If the battery is disconnected and reconnected while the lid is open, it is necessary to activate the system of the electric boot lid. Activation means closing the lid by hand. Thus, the end position of the lid is stored under fully closed in secured lock.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be lifted out of the lock	Emergency unlocking of the lid » page 227
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Remove any obstacle (e.g. snow), open the lid again » page 39 Press the handle A and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid

Electrical power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat	42
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors	42
Force limiter	43
Window convenience operation	43
Operational faults	43

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes. The electrical power windows are only switched off completely once the driver's door or front passenger door are opened.

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

WARNING

- Ensure that no persons are still left in the vehicle when locking the vehicle. In an emergency, the windows will no longer be able to be opened from the inside.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » [page 43](#). If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrical power windows in the rear doors (safety pushbutton) **S** » [Fig. 23](#) on [page 42](#) when children are being transported on the rear seats.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » [page 185](#), *De-icing windows and exterior mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » [page 43](#).
- When leaving the locked vehicle make sure that the windows are closed at all times.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

The window lift system is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the window from the driver seat

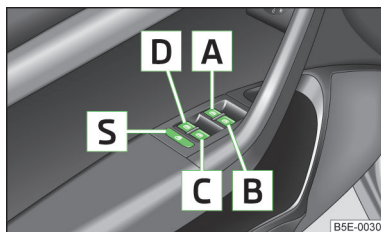


Fig. 23
Buttons on the driver's door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 41.

Opening

➤ A window is opened by pressing lightly on the respective button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

The window fully opens automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

➤ The window is closed through pulling lightly on the respective upper edge of the button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

The window fully closes automatically by briefly pulling the button as far as the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Buttons for the electrical power windows » Fig. 23.

- Button for electrical power window of the driver's door
- Button for electrical power window of the front passenger door
- Button for electrical power window of the rear right door
- Button for electrical power window of the rear left door
- Safety pushbutton

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for electrical power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety pushbutton » Fig. 23. The buttons for the electrical power windows in the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety pushbutton again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light in the safety switch lights up.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors



Fig. 24
Button arrangement in the front passenger door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 41.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button **down** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button **down** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button **up** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the button **up** as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Force limiter



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 41.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 41.

Convenience opening/closing of all windows can be operated by locking/unlocking the vehicle as follows.

Settings the window convenience operation» *Infotainment owner's manual*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (button CAR)*.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Opening

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the unlock position.

- Hold the button  in the opening position » Fig. 23 on page 42.

Closing

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- Hold the button  in the closing position » Fig. 23 on page 42.
- In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor  » Fig. 14 on page 31.

You can interrupt the opening or closing process for the windows immediately by releasing the key or the the button  and interrupting the locking/unlocking.

The convenience opening of the windows by means of the key in the driver's/ front passenger's lock is only possible within 45 seconds of deactivating or activating the alarm system.

Operational faults



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 41.

The automatic power windows do not work if the vehicle battery was disconnected and connected while a window is open. The system must be activated.

Proceed as follows in order to re-establish the function:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
- Release the button.
- Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 3 seconds, and keep it pressed down.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia)



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	44
Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof	44 ➤

¹⁾ Convenience opening and closing the windows with the button  is possible immediately after unlocking the vehicle or turning off the ignition and opening the driver's or front passenger's door.

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position **A** » Fig. 25 on page 44, pull it, and hold onto the recess downwards and forwards tightly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

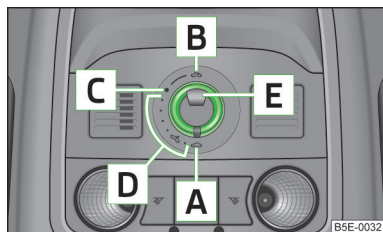


Fig. 25
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 43.

Comfort position

- Turn the switch to position **C** » Fig. 25.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially

- Turn the switch to a position in area **D**.

Open fully

- Turn the switch to position **B** and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

- Turn the switch to position **A**.
- Press the switch in the region of the lug **E** towards the roof.

Closing

- Turn the switch to position **A** » Fig. 25.
- Press the switch on the recess **E** down and then pull it forwards.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » **!**.



WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!



CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 43.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor **1** » Fig. 14 on page 31.

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows:

- Press and hold the symbol button  on the remote control key.
- Hold the key in the driver's lock in the lock position.
- In the KESSY system, hold a finger on the sensor **1** » Fig. 14 on page 31.

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor **1** when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

➤ Press and hold the symbol button  on the remote control key.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

i Note

- The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.
- We recommend, in the event of a failure of the sliding/tilting roof, to visit a ŠKODA Partner.

Panoramic sliding/tilting roof (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	45
Opening/closing the sun screen	46
Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof	46

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof does not operate correctly. Next, move the rotary switch into position **A** » Fig. 26 on page 45, pull it, and hold onto the recess downwards and forwards tightly. The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.
- If, for example, the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun screen does not operate correctly. Then turn the switch to position **A** » Fig. 26 on page 45 and press and hold the button **G** » Fig. 27 on page 46. The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds. Do not release the control dial until it has done so.

Operation

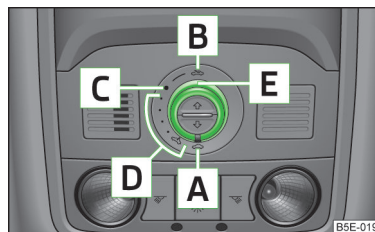


Fig. 26
Control dial for the sliding/tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 45.

Comfort position

➤ Turn the switch to position **C** » Fig. 26.

When the sliding/tilting roof is in the comfort position, the intensity of the wind noise is reduced.

Open partially

➤ Turn the switch to a position in area **D**.

Open fully

➤ Turn the switch to position **B** and hold it in this position (spring-tensioned position).

Tilting roof

- Turn the switch to position **A**.
- Press the switch in the region **E** towards the roof.

Closing

- Turn the switch to position **A** » Fig. 26.
- Press the switch on the recess **E** down and then pull it forwards.

Force limiter

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter. The sliding/tilting roof stops and moves back several centimetres when it cannot be closed because there is something in the way (e.g. ice). The sliding/tilting roof can be fully closed without a force limiter by pressing the switch on the recess down and then pushing it forward until the sliding/tilting roof is fully closed » **!**.

! WARNING

When closing the sliding/tilting roof proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Opening/closing the sun screen

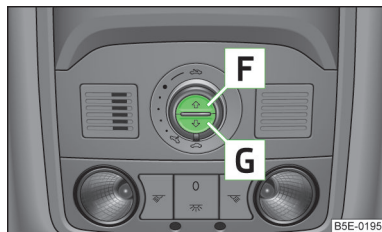


Fig. 27
Buttons for sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 45.

The sun screen can be closed or opened using the buttons » Fig. 27.

Opening

- Briefly press the button **F** » Fig. 27 to open fully.
- Press and hold the button **F** to open to the desired position.

The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Closing

- Briefly press the button **G** » Fig. 27 to close fully.
- Press and hold the button **F** to close in the desired position.

The closing process stops when one releases the button.

Convenience operation of Sliding/tilting roof



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 45.

The sliding/tilting roof can be operated by locking/unlocking using the key or using the KESSY system with the aid of the sensor **1** » Fig. 14 on page 31.

Closing

- Press and hold the symbol button on the key or hold the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position, or with the KESSY system, keep your finger on the sensor **1** » Fig. 14 on page 31 » **!**

By releasing the lock or lifting your finger off the sensor **1** when using the KESSY system, the closing process is immediately interrupted.

Tilting roof

- Press and hold the symbol button on the remote control key.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury! The force limiter does not operate with the convenience closing.

i Note

- The sliding/tilting roof cannot be opened using the convenience operating feature.
- We recommend, in the event of a failure of the sliding/tilting roof, to visit a SKODA Partner.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Side lights and low beam	48
Daytime running lights (DAY LIGHT)	48
Turn signal and main beam	49
Automatic driving lamp control	49
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	50
Headlight assist	51
Fog lights	52
Fog lights with the CORNER function	52
Rear fog light	52
COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME	53
Hazard warning light system	53
Parking light	54

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering** the position of certain switches differs from that shown in » [Fig. 28](#) on page 48. The symbols which mark the switch positions are identical.

The low beam continues to shine while the ignition is switched on and the light switch is in the position  or **AUTO**. After switching off the ignition, the low beam is switched off automatically and only the side lights come on. The side light goes out after the ignition key is removed.

Keep the headlights lenses clean. The following guidelines must be observed » [page 185](#), *Headlight lenses*.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.
- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the given light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!

Note

- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.
- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
- The instruments are also illuminated when the side light, low or high beam light is switched on. The brightness of the instrument lighting can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Side lights and low beam

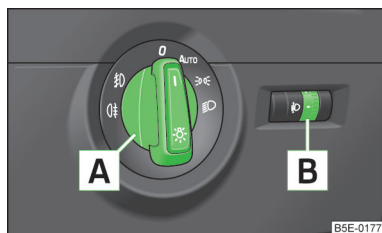


Fig. 28
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 47.

The light switch also controls the fog lights » page 52, the rear fog light » page 52 and the parking light » page 54.

The light switch or the control dial is used to operate the following functions » Fig. 28.

- » Switching on the parking light or parking lights on both sides.
- » Switching on the low beam.
- Switching off lights (except daytime running lights).
- » Headlight beam adjustment.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

- Front seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty.
- All seats occupied, luggage compartment loaded.
- Driver seat occupied, luggage compartment loaded.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to satisfy the following conditions.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- The Bi-Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Bi-Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.
- We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

Daytime running lights (DAY LIGHT)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 47.

The daytime running lights function provides the lighting of the front of the vehicle.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lights on vehicles with Infotainment
The daytime running light can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Deactivating daytime running lights on vehicles without Infotainment

- » Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push downwards » Fig. 29 on page 49.
- » At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

Activating daytime running lights on vehicles without Infotainment

- » Pull the turn signal and main beam lever to the steering wheel and push upwards » Fig. 29 on page 49.
- » At the same time switch on the ignition and hold the lever down in this position for at least 3 seconds.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or **AUTO** » Fig. 30 on page 49.

Note

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front or rear) and the number plate lights are not lit.

Turn signal and main beam

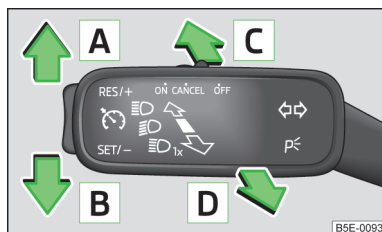


Fig. 29
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 47.

The parking light » page 54 and headlight flasher are also operated with the operating lever.

The following functions can be operated with the operating lever » Fig. 29.

- A** Right turn signal on.
- B** Left turn signal on.
- C** High beam on (spring-tensioned position).
- D** Main beam off or headlight flasher ON (spring-tensioned position).

If you only wish to flash three times (convenience turn signal), briefly push the lever to the pressure point **A** or where applicable **B** and release again.

The convenience turn signal can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Setting vehicle systems (CAR button).

The main beam can be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

On vehicles with Headlight assist, when the lever is put into position **C** the Assistant is activated » page 51.

WARNING

Only use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Note

- The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.
- The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Automatic driving lamp control

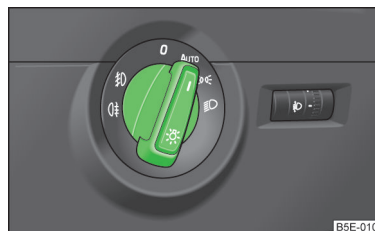


Fig. 30
Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 47.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 30, the side lights and low beam and number plate light are switched on/off automatically.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror.

The sensitivity of the light sensor can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Setting vehicle systems (CAR button).

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the symbol **AUTO** lights up next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic headlight control in rain

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** and if automatic wiping in rain or wiping (position 2 or 3) is switched on for longer than 30 seconds » page 59, the side lights and low beam will switch on automatically.

The light switches off when automatic wiping/wiping (position 2 or 3) is not switched on for longer than approx. 4 seconds.

The automatic headlight control in rain can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled. ■

Adaptive headlights (AFS)

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 47.**

The AFS system works in tandem with automatic driving lamp control **AUTO**, please read the following » [page 49](#).

The AFS system makes sure the street remains lit up depending on the traffic and weather situation.

The system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle based on the vehicle speed, whether the windscreen wipers are in use, the rear fog lights, and data from Infotainment Navigation.

The AFS system can work only if the following condition is met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The AHL system operates in the following modes.

Out of town mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam. The mode is active if none of the following modes are active.

City mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it illuminates the adjacent pavement, crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km/h.

Motorway mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 110 km/h.

Rain mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 50 – 90 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than 2 minutes. The mode is deactivated when the windscreen wipers are switched off for longer than 8 minutes.

Fog mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver is not dazzled by the reflection of the cone of light by fog in front of the vehicle.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the rear fog light is switched on for a period of time longer than 10 seconds. The mode is deactivated when the rear fog light is switched off for longer than 5 seconds.

Dynamic cornering lights

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km/h and in all AFS modes.

Tourist light

This mode makes it possible to drive in countries with opposing traffic system (driving on the left/right) without dazzling the oncoming vehicles.

When the "tourist light" mode is active, the above-mentioned modes and the side swivel of the headlights is deactivated.

The "Tourist light" mode can be configured in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

WARNING

If the AFS system is defective, the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a SKODA specialist garage as soon as possible.

Note

- When the "tourist light" mode is active, the warning icon  flashes for about 10 seconds each time the ignition is switched on.
- If the **Eco** driving mode is selected, the AFS system is deactivated » [page 143](#). ■

Headlight assist

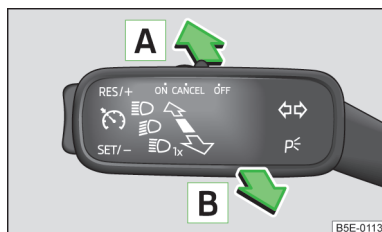


Fig. 31
Operating lever: Headlight assist



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 47.

The Headlight assist switches the headlights on/off automatically depending on the environmental conditions.

The headlight is regulated based on data gathered by the camera attached between the windscreen and interior mirror.

The function of Headlight assist can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

The headlight can switch off automatically at speeds above 60 km/h. The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

When the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, warning light  is lit in the instrument cluster.

Activating

- Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** » Fig. 30 on page 49.
- Place the lever in position **A** (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 31.

The warning icon  for the activated headlight assist appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Deactivating

- If the headlight is currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **B** (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 31.
- If the headlight is **not** currently switched on automatically, move the lever into position **A** (the headlight switches on) followed by position **B**.

If you want to **reactivate** the Assist, put the lever back into position **A**.

The Assist can also be deactivated when the light switch is turned from position **AUTO** to another position.

Manually switching on the headlights

If the headlight is **not** switched on automatically, it can be switched on manually - put the lever into position **A**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon  goes out.

Manually switching off the headlights

If the headlight is switched on automatically, it can be switched off manually - put the lever into position **B**. The assistant is deactivated, the warning icon  goes out.

Information message

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

! Error: Light Assist

S LIGHT ASSIST FAULT

Seek help from a SKODA specialist garage.

! Light Assist: clean the windscreen!

S WINDSCREEN PLEASE CLEAN

Check for any obstacles on the windscreen in the viewing area of the camera.



WARNING

Headlight assist only functions as a support and does not relieve the driver of his responsibility to check the headlights and light beam and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the light conditions. Manual operation may be required in the following situations.

- Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- The oncoming traffic is partially blocked on roads or motorways.
- Passing poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
- Driving around sharp curves.
- Driving on sharp slopes up/down.
- Driving through poorly-lit locations.
- Driving over highly reflective surfaces.
- The windscreen around the camera is dirty, iced up, misted up, or covered by stickers.
- An external navigation device is attached to the windscreen.

! CAUTION

- Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

Fog lights

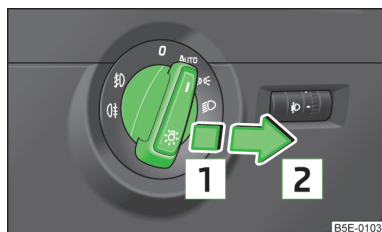


Fig. 32
Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 47.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 32.
- Pull the light switch to position **1**.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 12.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 47.

The CORNER function is designed to improve the illumination of the surrounding area near the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left¹⁾.
- ✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

i Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 47.

Switching on/off

- Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** or or » Fig. 32 on page 52.
- Pull the light switch to position **2**.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the position **2**. This switch only has one position.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 12.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

¹⁾ If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 47.

COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME (hereafter referred to only as function) makes it possible to automatically switch on the lights for a short time after leaving the vehicle or when approaching the vehicle in poor visibility.

The function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO** » Fig. 30 on page 49.
- ✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.

The function and duration of the lighting can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (button CAR)*.

The light is regulated based on data gathered by the light sensor attached between the windscreen and the interior mirror » page 49.

The function switches on the parking and low beam lights, the entry lighting in the exterior mirrors and the licence plate light.

COMING HOME

The light turns on automatically when you open the driver's door.

The light turns off after the preset time when you close all the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light goes out after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The light turns on automatically after the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

The light turns off after a preset time or after the vehicle is locked.



CAUTION

Do not affix any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen, so that its functionality is not impaired or disabled.



Note

If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul traffic.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 33
Button for hazard warning light system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 47.

Switching on/off

» Press the button  » Fig. 33.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

When the turn signal is switched on while the hazard warning light system is on (ignition on), only the turn signal light for the selected driving direction will flash while the turn signal is switched on.



Note

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.

- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking light



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 47.

Parking light switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Place the lever into the position  or where applicable  as far as it can go » Fig. 29 on page 49 - the side light on the right/left side of the vehicle is switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

- Turn the light switch  to position  » Fig. 28 on page 48 and lock the vehicle.



Note

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.

Interior light



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light	54
Rear interior light	55
Rear interior light	55
Front door warning light	56
Entry lighting	56

Front interior light

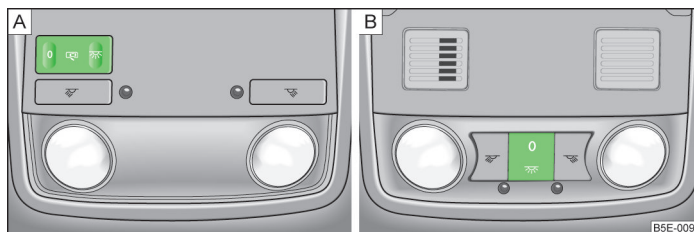


Fig. 34 Interior lights at the front

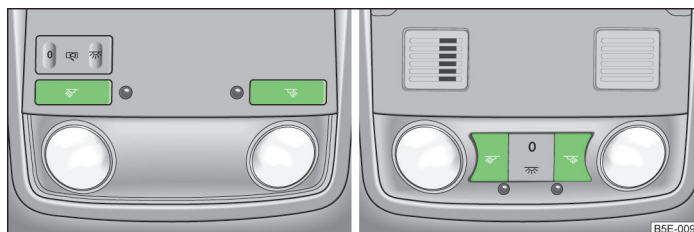


Fig. 35 Reading lights



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Switching on the light

- Press the button in the area of the symbol  » Fig. 34.

Switching off the light

- Press the button in the area of the symbol  » Fig. 34.

Operating with the door contact switch

- Place the button in the middle position.

On vehicles without an interior monitor, the middle position is marked with the symbol  » Fig. 34 - .

Switching the reading light on/off

➤ Press the button  or  » Fig. 35.

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will come on when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

If operating the light with the door contact switch is enabled, the light will go off when one of the following events occurs:

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

- If the interior light remains switched on when the ignition is switched off or if one of the doors is open, the light will automatically go out after around 10 minutes.
- Two diffuse lights are integrated in the front interior lighting, that illuminate the gearshift lever and the middle of the dash panel. These are switched on automatically when the parking light is activated. Also, after switching on the ignition when the parking lights are switched on, the door handle lighting comes on.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles without a panoramic sliding roof.

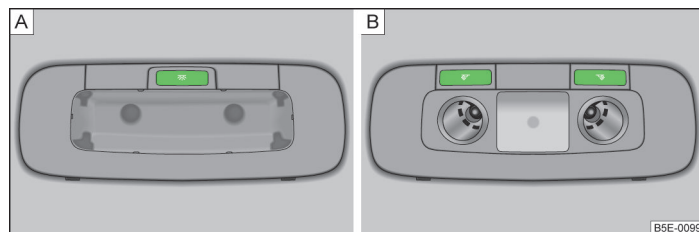


Fig. 36 Interior light without reading lights/interior light with reading lights



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The rear interior light is operated together with the front interior light » page 54.

Switching lamp without reading lights on/off

➤ Press the button  » Fig. 36 - [A].

Switching the reading light on/off

➤ Press the button  or  » Fig. 36 - [B].

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles with a panoramic sliding roof.

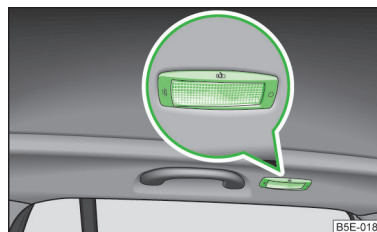


Fig. 37
Interior lights at the rear



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Switching on

➤ Press the cover glass on the icon  » Fig. 37.

Switching off

➤ Press the cover glass on the icon .

Operating with the door contact switch

➤ Place the cover glass in the middle position .

In this position, the same rules apply to this light as for the front interior light » page 54.

Front door warning light

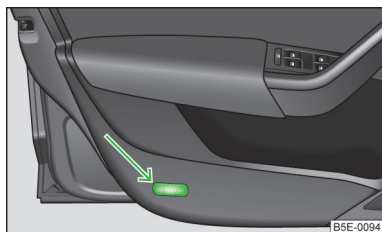


Fig. 38
Warning light



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The warning light is located in the lower door trim panel » Fig. 38.

The light switches on/off when the front door is opened or closed.

Vehicles without this warning light have only a reflector at this point.

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Entry lighting



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The light comes on after the vehicle has been unlocked or on opening the front door. The lighting goes out within around 30 seconds after the front door is closed or the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

Note

If the door is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Visibility



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater _____ 56

Sun visors _____ 57

Sun screen _____ 57

Windscreen and rear window heater

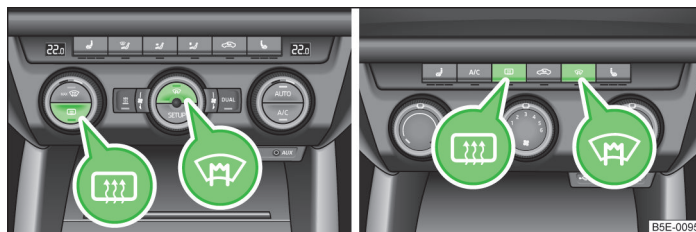


Fig. 39 Buttons for the front and rear window heater/manual air-conditioning system, heating



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 56.

Explanation of graphic

 Switching the windscreen heater on/off.

 Switching the rear window heater on/off.

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside or below the button.

The windscreen and rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The windscreen and rear window heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » [page 127](#), *Convenience consumers*.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the windscreen and rear window heater switches off automatically, to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » [page 205](#), *Automatic load deactivation*.

Sun visors

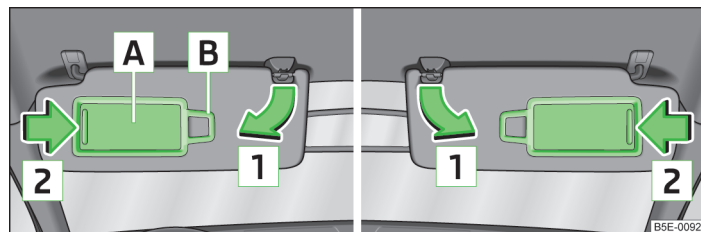


Fig. 40 Sun visor: left/right

 First read and observe the introductory information given on page 56.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of the arrow [1](#) » [Fig. 40](#).

The sun visors each have a vanity mirror [B](#) with a cover. Push the cover in the direction of the arrow [2](#).

The purpose of the note holder [B](#) is to store small objects, such as a notepad, etc.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. These objects might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Sun screen

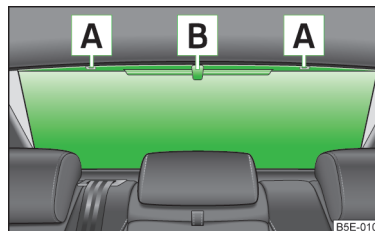


Fig. 41
Sun screen



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 56.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Pulling out

- » Grab the handle [B](#) » [Fig. 41](#).
- » Remove the sun screen and hang it from the brackets [A](#).

Folding

- » Grab the handle [B](#) » [Fig. 41](#).
- » Remove the sun screen from the brackets [A](#) and slowly roll it up again into the housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers	59
Headlight cleaning system	59

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet is closed.

If the intermittent wipe is switched on, the intervals are also controlled depending on speed.

When automatic wiping in rain is active, the wiper intervals are regulated based on the intensity of the rain.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Automatic rear window wiping can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » [page 196](#).

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » [page 228](#).
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping in rain only operates as a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- The ignition must not be switched on if the front windscreen wiper arms are folded out. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The rear window wiper only operates if the boot lid is closed.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.
- Keep the wiper blades clean. They may become soiled, e.g., with wax residues after washing in automatic car wash systems » [page 183](#).

Windscreen wipers and washers

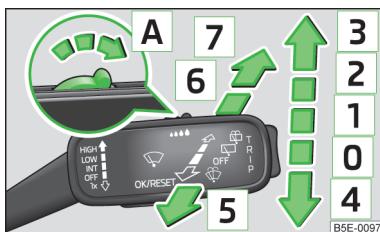


Fig. 42
Operating lever: Function of the windscreen wipers and washers



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 58.

Function of the windscreen wipers and washers in the individual positions » Fig. 42

- 0** Wipers off
- 1** Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
- 2** slow windscreen wiping
- 3** rapid windscreen wiping
- 4** Flick windscreen wiping (spring-tensioned position)
- 5** Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6** Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes every 6 seconds)
- 7** Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
- A** Switches for setting the required break between the individual wiper strokes (**1** periodic windscreen wiping) or the wiper speed in rain (**1** automatic windscreen wiping in rain)

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later. The wash system and the windscreen wiper operate simultaneously at a speed of more than 120 km/h.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen).

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This feature can be activated/deactivated by a SKODA specialist garage.

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window

The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 2 - 3 wiper strokes (depending on the period of spraying of the windscreen). The lever remains in position **6**.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

- Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » [page 228](#).

i Note

If the slow or the fast wiper setting is switched on and the vehicle speed decreases to below 4 km/h, the wiper speed is incrementally set to a lower wiper speed. The original setting is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.

Headlight cleaning system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 58.

The headlights are always cleaned (after the ignition is switched on) after the first and every tenth spraying of the windscreen when the low beam is switched on and the lever is pulled into position **5** » Fig. 42 on page 59.

Every time the windscreen is cleaned represents the tenth time each headlight is sprayed.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror	61
Exterior mirrors	61

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.
- The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

WARNING

Automatic dimming mirrors contain an electrolytic fluid which may leak should the mirror glass break.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, open all windows and doors.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

CAUTION

Never mechanically fold in or fold back the exterior mirrors with the fold-in function  by hand as this will damage the electric drive.

Note

- Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the sun screen for the rear window in the housing on the boot cover is not in use or the light striking the interior rear-view mirror is not affected by other objects.
- If the automatic interior mirror dimming is switched off, the exterior mirror dimming is also switched off.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the the electrical exterior mirror setting fails at any time, the two mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact your ŠKODA specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting of the exterior mirrors.

Interior mirror

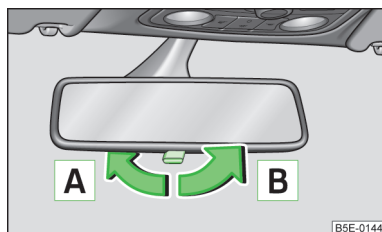


Fig. 43
Manual dimming mirror

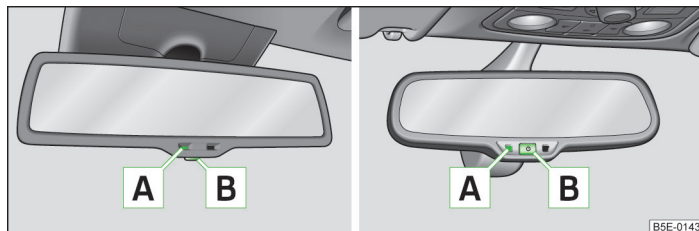


Fig. 44 Automatic dimming mirror

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 60.

Manual dimming interior mirror

- Adjust the lever towards the windscreen at the lower edge of the mirror (the mirror dims) » Fig. 43.
- Adjust the lever away from the windscreen at the lower edge of the mirror (home position) .

Automatic dimming mirror

- Press the button , the warning light lights up (the mirror is activated) » Fig. 44.

To deactivate, press the button again, the warning light goes out.

If automatic dimming is activated, the mirror dims **automatically** depending on the light striking the mirror from the rear.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 60, in section *Introduction*.

Exterior mirrors

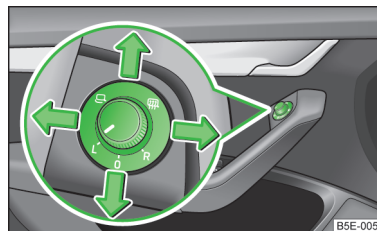


Fig. 45
Rotary knob



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 60.

Mirror heater

- Set the rotary knob into the position » Fig. 45.

The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.

Adjusting both mirrors in sync

- Set the rotary dial into position or, on right-hand drive vehicles, into position » Fig. 45. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

The synchronous setting of both mirrors can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

Adjusting the front passenger's mirror

- Set the rotary dial into position or, on right-hand drive vehicles, into position » Fig. 45. The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Switching off operating control

- Set the rotary knob into the position » Fig. 45.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors with the rotary knob

➤ Set the rotary knob into the position  » [Fig. 45](#).

It is only possible to fold in both exterior mirrors when the ignition is switched on and at a speed of up to 50 km/h.

The mirrors are folded back into the driving position after the rotary knob is turned from the position  to a different one.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key

➤ Press and hold the lock button  on the remote control key.

Folding in requires that all electrical power windows are working » [page 43](#), *Operational faults*.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Folding in of both mirrors can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Automatic dimming mirror

The exterior mirrors are dimmed together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » [page 61](#).

Tilting surface of front passenger mirror

On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver seat » [page 66](#), the surface of the mirror tilts down slightly when the reverse gear is engaged and the rotary knob is in the position  or in position  on vehicles with right-hand drive » [Fig. 45](#). This provides an aid in seeing the kerb of the pavement when parking the car.

The mirror returns into its initial position, after the rotary knob is moved out of the position  or position  on vehicles with right-hand drive, and put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

Tilting the surface of the front passenger mirror can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Memory function for mirrors

On vehicles fitted with the memory function for the driver seat » [page 66](#) or the memory function for the remote control key » [page 66](#) it is possible to save the position of the exterior mirror when saving the driver seat position. ■

Seats and useful equipment

Adjusting the seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual seat adjustment	64
Electric seat adjustment	64
Head restraints	65
Memory function of electrically adjustable seat	66
Memory function of the remote control key	66

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important:

- for safely and quickly reaching the controls;
- for a relaxed, fatigue-free body position;
- **for achieving maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- As the electric front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off (even when the ignition key is withdrawn), never leave children unattended in the car.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.

WARNING (Continued)

- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » [page 177](#), *Transporting children safely with a suitable restraint system*.
- At all times, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the person's body size and the seat belt must be attached properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except objects (e.g. child safety seat) provided for this purpose – risk of accident!

WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions.

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

i Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seated position in the seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each new driver seat and external mirror position that is saved will overwrite the existing setting.

Manual seat adjustment

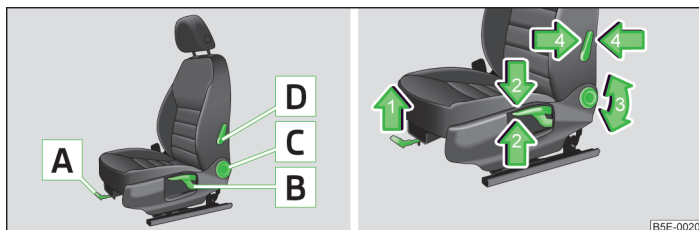


Fig. 46 Controls for manual seat adjustment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 63.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Pull the lever » Fig. 46 in the direction of the arrow 1 and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

- Again push/pull the lever » Fig. 46 in the direction of one of the arrows 2.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- Relieve any pressure from the seat backrest (do not lean on it) and turn the handwheel » Fig. 46 in the direction of the arrow 3.

Adjusting lumbar support

- Push the lever » Fig. 46 in the direction of one of the arrows 4

Electric seat adjustment

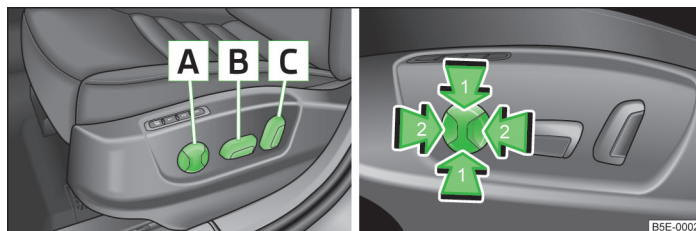


Fig. 47 Controls for the electric seat adjustment I

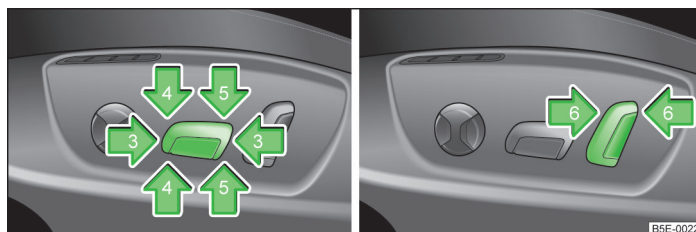


Fig. 48 Controls for the electric seat adjustment II

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 63.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

- Push the switch » Fig. 47 in the direction of one of the arrows 3 » Fig. 48.

Set the height of the seat cushion

- Push the switch » Fig. 47 in the direction of one of the arrows 5 » Fig. 48.

Adjust the angle of the seat cushion

- Push the switch » Fig. 47 in the direction of one of the arrows 4 » Fig. 48.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

- Push the switch » Fig. 47 in the direction of one of the arrows 6 » Fig. 48.

Reducing or increasing the curvature of the lumbar support

- Push the switch **A** » Fig. 47 in the region of one of the arrows 2.

Raising or lowering the curvature of the lumbar support

- Push the switch **A** » Fig. 47 in the region of one of the arrows 1.

The adjusted driver's seat position can be set in the memory of the seat » page 66 or the remote control key » page 66.

i Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the button again.

Head restraints

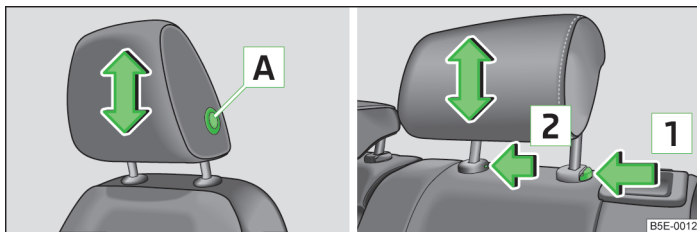


Fig. 49 Head restraint: front/rear

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 63.

Setting height

- Hold the **front head restraints** on the sides with both hands, press and hold the safety button **A** » Fig. 49 and move the head restraints into position.
- Hold the **rear head restraints** on the sides with both hands and move them upwards » Fig. 49.

To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the safety button **1** with one hand and press the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

Removing/installing

Only the rear head restraints may be removed.

- Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.

- Press the locking button in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 49, simultaneously press the locking button into the opening **2** using a flat screwdriver with a width of maximum 5 mm and pull out the head restraint.
- To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

The head restraints must be adjusted to match the size of the seat occupant. Correctly adjusted head restraints together with the seat belts offer effective protection for the occupants » page 159, *Proper seated position*.

! WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

i Note

The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.

Memory function of electrically adjustable seat

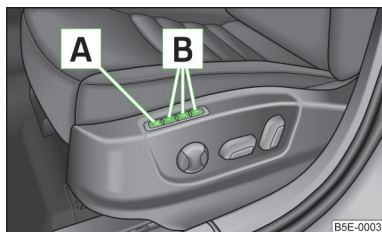


Fig. 50
Memory buttons and SET button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 63.

The memory function for the driver's seat provides the option to store the positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors. Each of the three memory buttons **B** » Fig. 50 can be assigned a set position.

Storing seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the seat to the desired position.
- Adjust both of the exterior mirrors » page 61.
- Press the button **SET** **A** » Fig. 50.
- Within 10 seconds after pressing the **SET** button, press the desired memory button **B**.

An acknowledgment sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the required memory button **B** » Fig. 50.
- Move the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control into position **R** » page 61.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position » page 61.
- Take the vehicle out of gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

- Tap the desired memory button **B** » Fig. 50 when the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.
- Press down on the desired memory button **B** when the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is closed.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

- Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **⏏** on the remote control key.

i Note

Each time you store the seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward you also have to re-store the setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

Memory function of the remote control key



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 63.

The automatic storage function of the driver's seat and exterior mirrors position when locking the vehicle can be activated in the memory of the remote control key.

When this function is activated, each time the vehicle is locked, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key. After subsequently unlocking the vehicle with the same key, the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key.

This function can also be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » Bedienungsanleitung Infotainment, chapter *operating instructions for Infotainment* Setting vehicle systems (CAR button).

Activating the function

- Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- Press and hold any memory button **B** » Fig. 50 on page 66. After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button **⏏** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

The seat and exterior mirror settings are **not** saved in the memory of the key, which is already saved in the memory button.

The seat can be adjusted to the required position if necessary » page 64.

After locking the vehicle, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key.

Deactivating the function

- Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- Press and hold the **SET** button **A** » Fig. 50 on page 66. At the same time, press the button **B** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

- Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **B** on the remote control key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters	67
Front armrest	68
Rear armrest	68
Folding front passenger seat	68
Seat backrests	69

Seat heaters

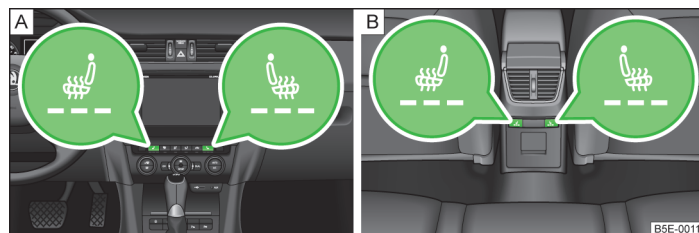


Fig. 51 Heating: Front seats/ rear seats



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 67.

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the two outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Switching on

- Press the symbol button or » Fig. 51.

By pressing the button once, the heating is switched to the highest intensity - level 3, which is indicated by three of the warning lights underneath the switch » Fig. 51 - **A** or in the button » Fig. 51 - **B** lighting up.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level of the seat heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath/in the switch.



WARNING

If you have limited pain and/or temperature sensitivity, we recommend that you do not use the seat heating - risk of burns! If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.



CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not use the seat heaters if the seats are not occupied by persons or if objects, such as a child seat, bag, etc., are fastened or stored on them. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 187, *Fabric covers on electrically heated seats*.



Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 205, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest

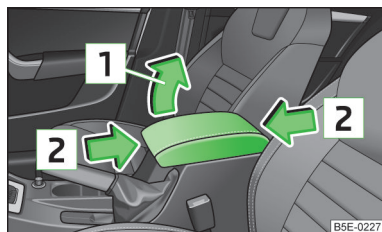


Fig. 52
Adjusting armrest height and length



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 67.

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Setting height

- First of all fold the cover downwards and then lift it in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 52 into one of the 4 fixed positions.

Adjusting in the forward/back direction

- Move the lid into the desired position in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 52.

The armrest includes a storage compartment underneath » page 75.

i Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the hand-brake.

Rear armrest

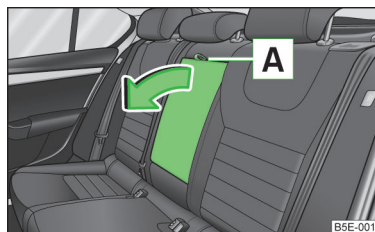


Fig. 53
Fold the armrest forwards



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 67.

Folding forward

- Pull on the loop **A** » Fig. 53 and fold the arm rest forwards in the direction of the arrow.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 72.

Folding front passenger seat

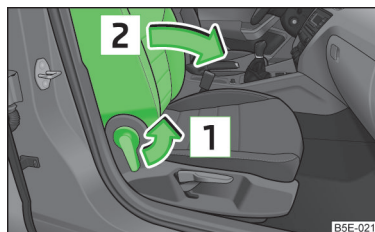


Fig. 54
Folding the front passenger seat forward



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 67.

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

- Place the lever in position **1** » Fig. 54.
- Fold the seat backrest forward in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

- Place the lever in position **[1]** » Fig. 54.
- Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow **[2]**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 173.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs away from between the seat cushion and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport objects on the seat backrest which was folded forwards, which:
 - impair driver visibility;
 - make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they are placed under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone;
 - could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Seat backrests

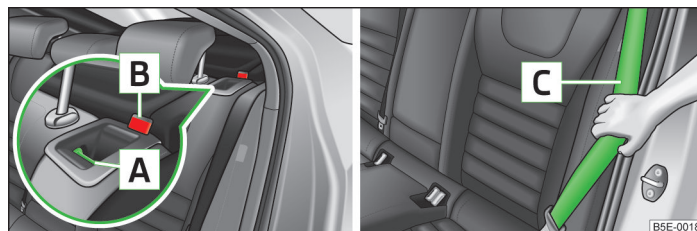


Fig. 55 Seat backrest: Locking/unlocking

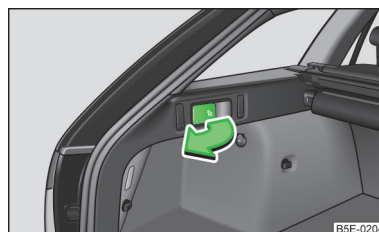


Fig. 56
Luggage compartment: Folding
the rear seat backrest forward
(Octavia Estate)



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 67.

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Folding forward

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests ¹⁾.

- Push the lever **[A]** » Fig. 55 and fold the seat backrest completely forwards.

¹⁾ If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Folding forward (Octavia Estate)

In the Octavia Estate vehicles, the rear seat backrests can also be folded forward from the luggage compartment » .

There is a lever on the **right** side of the luggage compartment for folding the right and the middle rear seat forward.

There is a lever on the **left** side of the luggage compartment for folding the left rear seat forward.

► Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow » .

The corresponding seat backrest is folded forward.

Folding backwards

► Hold the rear outer seat belt  »  against the side trim panel.

► Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob  clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » .

► Make sure that the red pin  is hidden.

WARNING

- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.

CAUTION

- Before folding the seat backrest forward, check that there are no objects on the rear seat. When folding the seat backrest forward, they could be damaged or cause damage to the seat backrest and the seat.
- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Parking ticket holder	71
Storage compartment on the driver's side	71
Storage compartments in the doors	71
Holder for reflective vest	72
Storage compartment in the front centre console	72
Cup holder	72
Cigarette lighter	73
Ashtray	73
12-volt power	74
Multimedia holder	74
Storage compartment under the front armrest	75
Glasses storage box	75
Storage compartment on the driver's side	75
Storage compartment under the front passenger's seat	76
Clothes hook	76
Map pocket on the front seats	77
Storage compartment in the rear centre console	77
230-volt power	77
Rear seat backrest with through-loading channel	78
Removable through-loading bag	79

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes, operate the clutch or accelerator – risk of accident!

Parking ticket holder

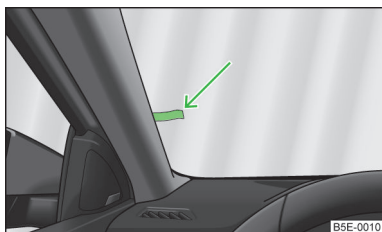


Fig. 57
Windscreen: Parking ticket holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 70.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

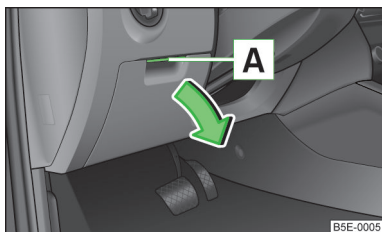


Fig. 58
Storage compartment on the driver's side

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 70.

Open/close

➤ Raise the handle » Fig. 58 and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

➤ Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Storage compartments in the doors

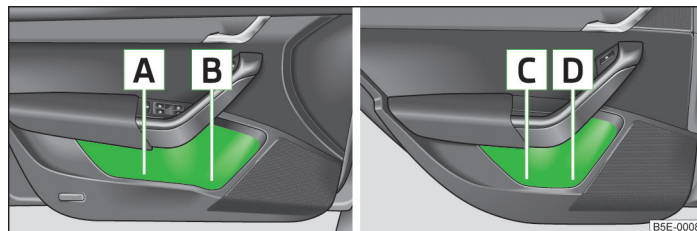


Fig. 59 Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 70.

The area » Fig. 59 and has a bottle holder.

WARNING

Use the area » Fig. 59 of the storage compartment only for storing objects which do not project so that the effectiveness of the side airbag is not impaired.

Note

In area of the stowage compartment of the rear doors, a bottle can be housed with a max. content of 0.5 l.

Holder for reflective vest

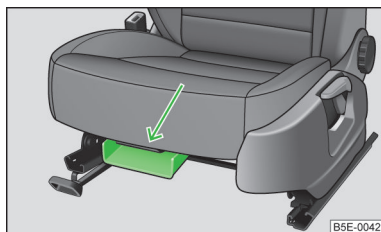


Fig. 60
Driver seat: Holder for reflex vest

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 70.

The holder for the reflex vest is located under the driver's seat » Fig. 60.

WARNING

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – otherwise it may fall out of the holder – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedal!

CAUTION

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – risk of damage to the holder.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

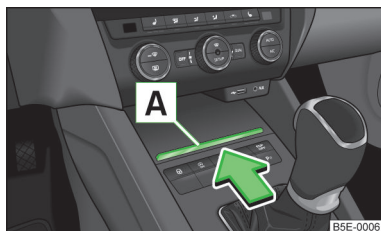


Fig. 61
Opening the storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 70.

Open/close

» Press on the lid edge  » Fig. 61 in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

The phone box may be located in the stowage compartment » page 108.



WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

Cup holder

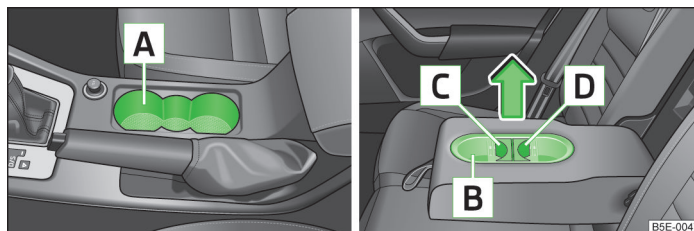


Fig. 62 Cup holder: in the front centre console/in the rear armrest



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 70.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holders/recesses.

-  Cup holder in front centre console
-  Cup holder in rear armrest
-  Removable element
-  Removable element

You can change the size of the individual openings using the removable elements  and .

! WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter

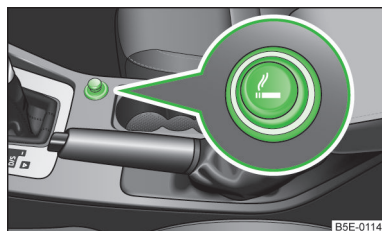


Fig. 63
Cigarette lighter

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

Using the system

- Press in the button of the cigarette lighter » Fig. 63.
- Wait until the button pops forward.
- Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
- Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

! WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

i Note

- The cigarette lighter socket cannot be used as a 12Volt socket.
- Further information » page 188, *Accessories, changes and replacement of parts*.

Ashtray

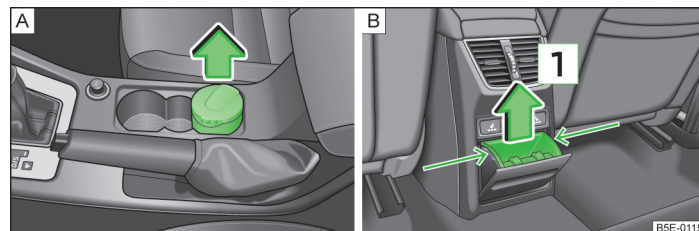


Fig. 64 Ashtrays: front/rear

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

- Pull out the ashtray » Fig. 64 - A in the direction of the arrow.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

- Open the storage compartment » page 77.
- Grasp the insert in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 64 - B.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

! WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

When removing do not hold the ashtray at the cover on the front – risk of breakage.

12-volt power

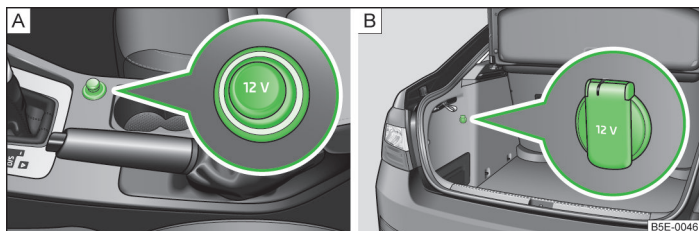


Fig. 65 12-Volt power socket: in the front centre console/ in the boot

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 70.

Overview of the 12-volt power socket

In the front centre console » Fig. 65 - [A].

In the boot » Fig. 65 - [B].

Use of the 12-volt power socket

- Remove the cover on the power socket and open the cover on the power socket.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12-volt power sockets and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » .

! WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power sockets.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Multimedia holder

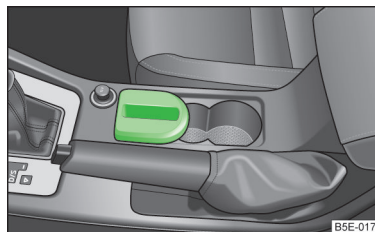


Fig. 66
Multimedia holder

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 70.

The multimedia holder is located in the front centre console » Fig. 66.

You can use this holder to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

! WARNING

Never use the holder as an ashtray or for storing flammable objects – risk of fire!

Storage compartment under the front armrest

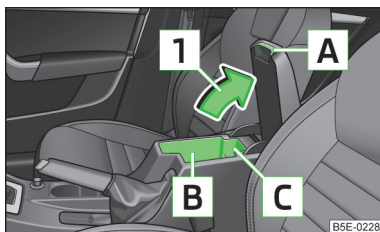


Fig. 67
Opening the storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

Open/close

- Pull and open the cover of the armrest using the handle **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 67.
- Open the lid to the stop, only then can it be folded downwards and against the direction of the arrow **1**.

The area **B** » Fig. 67 of the storage compartment is designed for the storage of objects with a maximum size of 98 mm x 104 mm x 142 mm.

The area **C** of the storage compartment is designed for the storage of smaller objects.

Glasses storage box

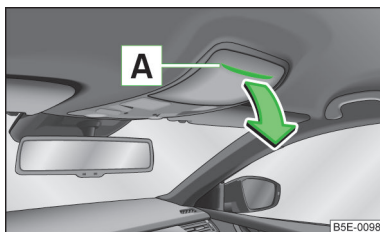


Fig. 68
Opening the glasses storage box



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

Open/close

- Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in the area **A** » Fig. 68.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

- Swivel the lid on the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow until it is heard to lock.



WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!



CAUTION

Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – they may be damaged.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

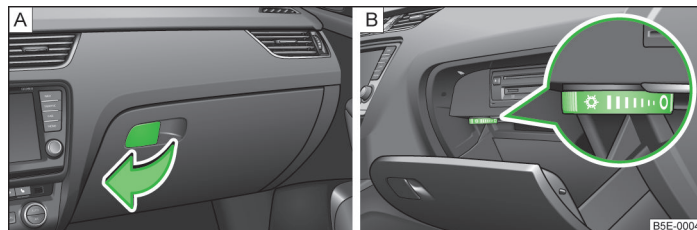


Fig. 69 Open storage compartment/control cooling of storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

A pen and credit card holder is provided in the storage compartment.

Open/close

- Pull the handle of the flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 69 – [A] and fold down the flap.
- Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Cooling

- Use the rotary switch » Fig. 69 – [B] to open/close the air supply.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

i Note

When the stowage compartment is opened, a light lights up.

Storage compartment under the front passenger's seat

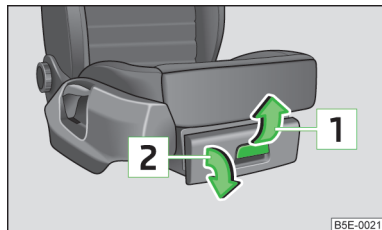


Fig. 70
Front passenger seat: Opening the storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

Open/close

- Pull the handle to position [1] » Fig. 70.

The compartment opens out in the direction of the arrow [2].

- When closing the compartment, hold the handle until the compartment is closed.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

! CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight.

Clothes hook



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

The clothes hooks are located at the centre door bars of the vehicle.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing otherwise this may reduce the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Map pocket on the front seats



Fig. 71
Map pockets



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

The pockets intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc. are provided on the reverse side of the front seat rests » Fig. 71.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Do not put any large items (such as bottles) or sharp objects into the map pockets, as the pockets and the seat covers could be damaged.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console

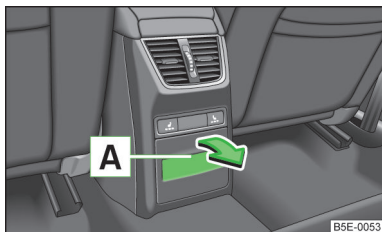


Fig. 72
Opening the storage compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

The storage compartment is equipped with a removable insert.

Open/close

➤ Pull the handle **A** » Fig. 72 on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.



WARNING

The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

230-volt power

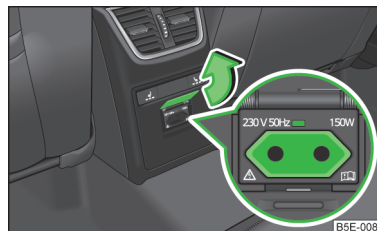


Fig. 73
Centre console at rear: 230-Volt power socket



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

Use

➤ Fold out the lid on the power socket in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 73.
➤ Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 230-Volt power socket can only be used when the ignition is switched on » **!**.

When the plug on the electrical appliance is inserted into the power socket, the child safety lock is released, and the power socket is activated.

LED display

- Permanent green light: The power socket is activated.
- Flashing red light: The power socket is temporarily deactivated.

The power socket is deactivated automatically when the amperage is too high, the temperature is too high or the battery charge state is too low.

When the reasons for the deactivation no longer apply, the power socket will be re-activated automatically. Then re-activate connected devices which are switched on » **!**

! WARNING

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The power sockets- and thus the connected electrical devices -only operates if the ignition is switched on!
- Improper use can lead to serious injury or fire. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle – risk of injury!
- Safely stow away all connected devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- Do not pour liquids into the power socket – risk of death! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The connected appliances may behave differently to when connected to the mains.
- The connected devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- The child lock on the 230 Volt power socket is unlocked when using energised adapters and extension cables – risk of injury!
- Do not insert any conductive objects into the contacts of the power socket, e.g. knitting needs – risk of death!

! CAUTION

- Place the connector on the electrical device into the power socket as far as it can go to create a connection between the contacts.
- If the connector of the electrical device is not inserted fully into the power socket, the child safety lock might release, and the power socket be activated. The electrical device is nevertheless not connected.
- The 230-volt power socket is temporarily disabled when the engine starts and the LED flashes red. After starting the engine, the power socket is re-activated automatically.

- Do not connect any lamps with neon filaments to the 230 V power socket - risk of damaging the lamp.
- A larger current surge may arise in some power supplies (e.g. for notebooks) when connecting them to a 230 V power socket- this will automatically deactivate the power socket. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the consumer and connect the power supply to the power socket first, followed by the consumer.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Rear seat backrest with through-loading channel

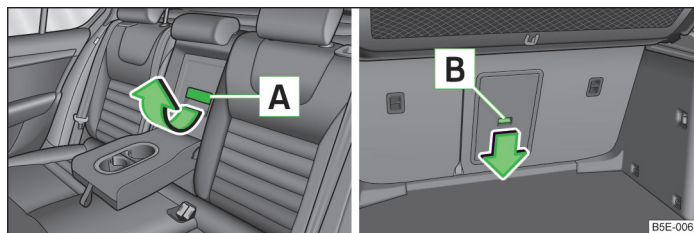


Fig. 74 Rear seats: Cover handle/boot: Unlock button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

After folding the rear armrest and cover up, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the removable through-loading bag with skis can be pushed. The armrest and cover can be folded forward from the passenger compartment or the boot.

Opening from the passenger compartment

- Fold the rear armrest down (not as far as the stop) » page 68.
- Pull the handle **A** » Fig. 74 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover downwards.

Opening from the boot

- Push the unlock button **B** » Fig. 74 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing

- Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button **B** » Fig. 74 is not visible from the boot.

! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, removable through-loading bag » page 79.

Removable through-loading bag

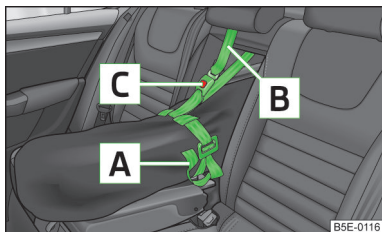


Fig. 75
Securing the through-loading bag



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 70.

The removable through-loading bag is solely used for transporting skis.

Loading

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 78.
- Place the empty, removable through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- Push the skis into the removable through-loading bag from the boot » **!**
- Close the through-loading bag.

Securing

- Tighten the strap **A** on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 75.
- Fold the seat backrest a little forward.

- Guide the securing strap **B** through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Insert the securing strap **B** into the lock **C** until it clicks into place.



WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap **B** » Fig. 75.
- The strap **A** must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap **A** holds the skis in front of the binding (also refer to imprint on the removable through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.



Note

- The through-loading bag is foreseen for four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the removable through-loading bag.
- If there are several pairs of skis in the removable through-loading bag, ensure that the bindings are positioned at the same height.
- The removable through-loading bag must never be folded together or stowed when moist.

Luggage compartment



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements	81
Fixing nets	81
Folding double hooks	82
Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate)	82
Floor covering	83
Luggage net	83
Luggage compartment cover	84
Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)	85
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks	85 ➤

Storage compartment in the luggage compartment	86
Storage compartments under the floor covering	87
Storage box	87
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)	88

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

- Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the nets » [page 81](#).

In the event of an accident, there is such a high kinetic energy which is produced by small and light objects that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an unsecured object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ". You can imagine the injuries that can occur, if this "object" flies through the interior compartment and hits an occupant.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the boot lid is opened or closed.

! WARNING

- Store the objects in the luggage compartment and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that the handling properties of the vehicle may be affected when transporting heavy objects as the centre of gravity can be displaced – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps which must be firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The items carried in the luggage compartment must be stored in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres are undertaken – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » [page 160](#), *Proper seated position of the passengers in the rear seats*.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the luggage compartment!

! CAUTION

Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the following:

- heating elements in the rear window;
- elements of the aerial integrated in the rear window;
- elements of the aerial integrated in the rear side windows (Octavia Estate).

i Note

- Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » [page 208](#), *Life of tyres*.
- If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

Fastening elements

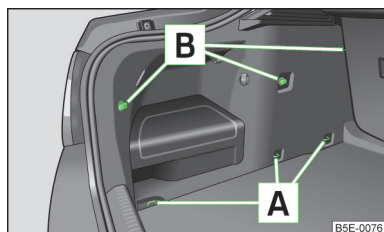


Fig. 76
Fastening elements Octavia

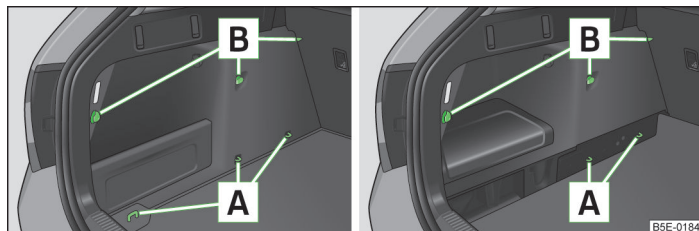


Fig. 77 Fastening elements Octavia Estate: Equipment without variable loading floor/equipment with variable loading floor



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

The luggage compartment comprises the following fastening elements. » Fig. 76 or » Fig. 77.

- A** Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
- B** Fastening elements and eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the lashing eyes **A** is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

i Note

The upper front lashing eye is located underneath the folding rear seat backrest. ■

Fixing nets

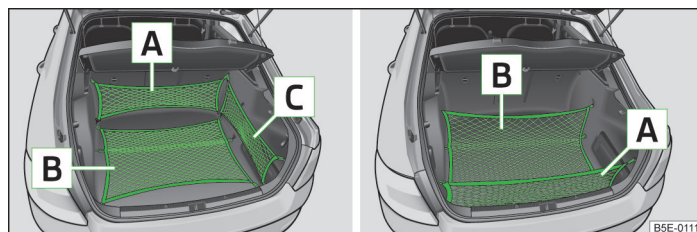


Fig. 78 Fastening examples for nets

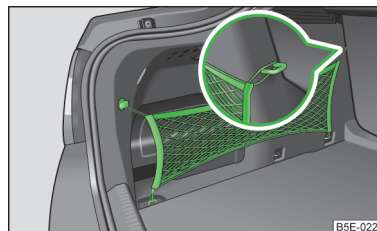


Fig. 79
Fastening vertical pocket



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Examples for attaching the fixing nets» Fig. 78.

- A** Horizontal pocket
- B** Floor net
- C** Vertical pocket

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.

Folding double hooks



Fig. 80
Folding double hooks



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

The folding double hook is used to affix small items of luggage, e.g. bags.

The folding double hook can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

! CAUTION

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate)

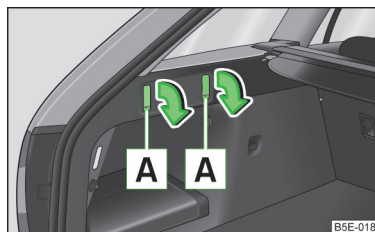


Fig. 81
Foldable hooks



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

Foldable hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

- Press on the lower portion of the hook **A** and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 81.

The front foldable hooks are also used to fasten the rear bar of the multifunction box » page 88.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Floor covering

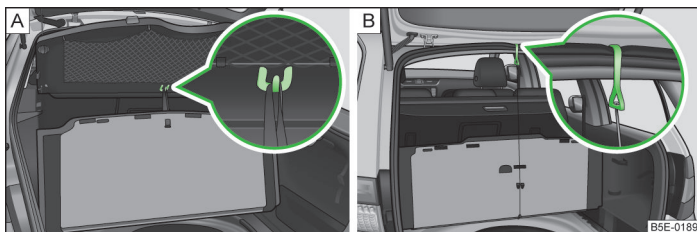


Fig. 82 Fixing the floor covering: Octavia/Octavia Estate

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

The raised floor covering of the luggage compartment can be fixed (e.g. when handling the spare wheel):

- Octavia: with the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 82 - .
- Octavia Estate: with the hook on the frame of the boot lid » Fig. 82 - .

CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed in the Octavia Estate only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 98 on page 90.

Luggage net

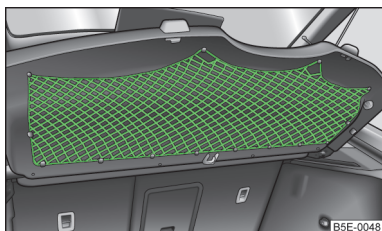


Fig. 83
Luggage net



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

The luggage net is located on the underside of the luggage compartment cover. The net is designed for transporting lighter objects.



WARNING

Only store soft objects with a total weight of 1.5 kg in the net. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!



CAUTION

No objects with sharp edges should be stored in the luggage net, as they can damage the luggage net.

Luggage compartment cover

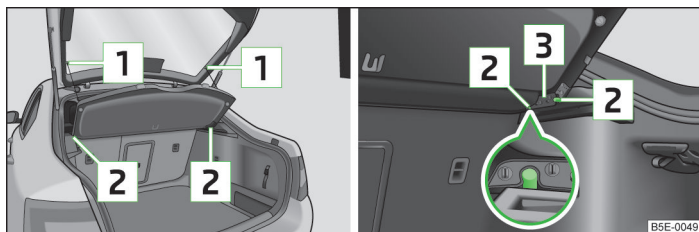


Fig. 84 Removing/installing the luggage compartment cover

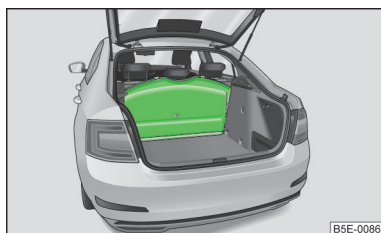


Fig. 85
Luggage compartment cover
stowed behind the rear seats



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 79.

Removing

- Unhook the support straps  » Fig. 84.
- On the underside of the cover, in the area between the holders, press .
- Remove the cover.

Install

- Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
- The mounts of the cover  » Fig. 84 must be positioned above the holders  of the side trim panel.
- Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock in the holders.
- Hook the support straps  on the boot lid.

The removed boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest » Fig. 85.



WARNING

No objects should be placed on the luggage compartment cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.



CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.
- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
 - The mounts of the cover  » Fig. 84 must be interlocked in the holders of the side trim panel .
 - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover.
 - The cover must not be jammed in the seal of the boot lid when it is in the opened position.
 - There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.



Note

Opening the boot lid also lifts up the boot cover.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)

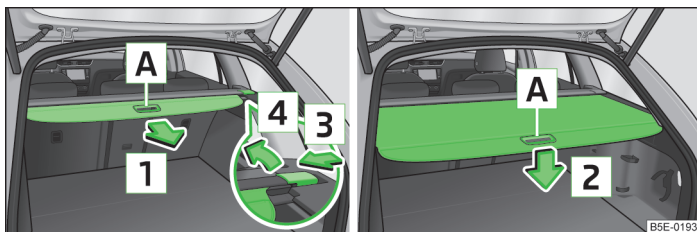


Fig. 86 Pull out and remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover/roll up luggage compartment cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

Pulling out

➤ Grasp the cover on the handle **A** » Fig. 86 and pull it out in the direction of the arrow **1** until it clicks.

Folding

➤ Push the cover in the area of the handle **A** » Fig. 86 in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled-up luggage compartment cover can be removed (e.g. for the transport of bulky objects).

➤ Push on the side of the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 86 and remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **4**.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

The removed luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the storage compartment under the variable loading floor » page 85, *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks*.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover.

Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks

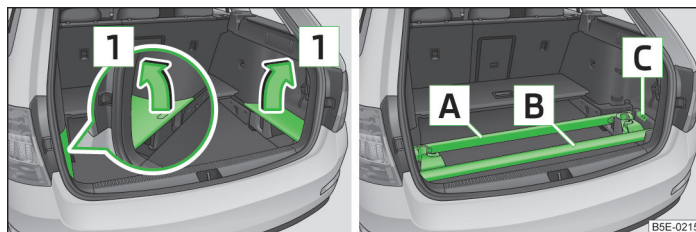


Fig. 87 Removing the side covers/stowing roof racks properly

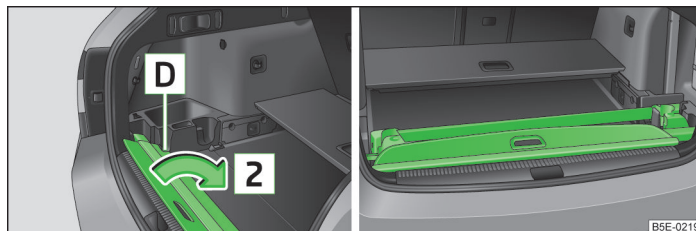


Fig. 88 Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover/stowing roof racks and roll-up luggage compartment cover properly

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

Stowing the roof racks

- Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 90.
- Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 87.
- Insert the front roof rack **A** into the front recesses of the side trim.
- Insert the rear roof rack **B** into the rear recesses of the side trim.

- Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **1**.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 89.

Stowing the roll-up luggage compartment cover

- Fold the variable loading floor in the upper position » page 90.
- Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 87.
- Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim **D** » Fig. 88 on the left.
- Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 87.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 89.

When stowing **both** the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover, the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover should overlap the rear roof rack » Fig. 88.

i Note

- Before stowing the roof rack, pull out the key from the carrier, otherwise it could be damaged.
- The keys to the roof rack can be stowed in the recess **C** » Fig. 87.

Storage compartment in the luggage compartment

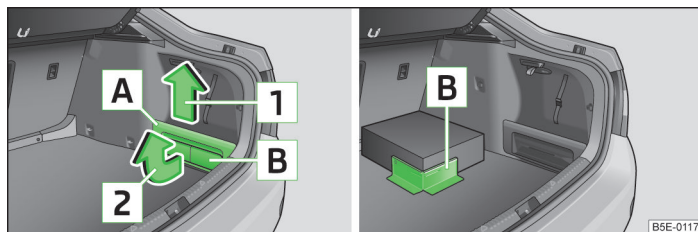


Fig. 89 Removing stowage compartment and cargo element/example of attaching an item of luggage using the cargo element



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I on page 79.**

Increasing the size of the boot

- Remove the cover of the storage compartment **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 89.

Securing items of luggage

- The cargo element **B** (part of the cover of the storage compartment) in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 89.
- Secure the cargo element with Velcro on the floor covering of the luggage compartment.

The stowage compartment can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

! CAUTION

- The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects of up to 2.5 kg. in weight in total.
- The cargo element is designed for attaching objects with a maximum gross weight of 8 kg.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.

i Note

We recommend you use the cargo element to secure items of luggage behind the rear seats.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

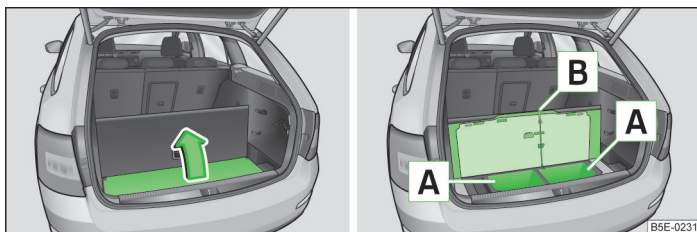


Fig. 90 Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

The storage compartments are located under the floor covering of the luggage compartment in vehicles without a spare wheel.

Use

- Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 90.
- Remove the fog floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 90.
- Fix the hook **B** to the top edge of the variable loading floor.

It is possible to store also objects with larger heights in the storage compartments **A**, thereby using the maximum height of the luggage compartment.

CAUTION

- An item of luggage weighing up to 15 kg can be stored in each storage compartment.
- Do not stored any sharp objects in the storage compartments.
- Do not load the storage compartments at specific points or they may be damaged.
- Place the objects carefully into the storage compartments to avoid damage to the compartments.

Storage box

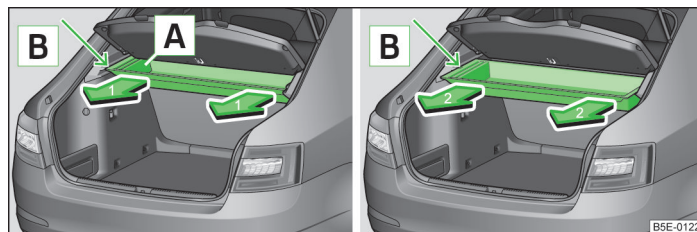


Fig. 91 Storage box: Sliding out/removing

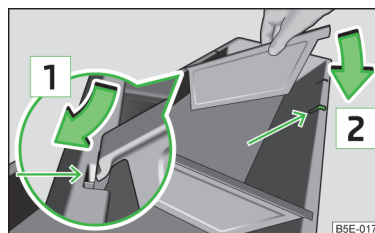


Fig. 92 Storage box: Insert lateral carrier rail

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 79.

The storage box under the luggage compartment cover can be divided by means of two lateral carrier rails **A** » Fig. 91.

Inserting/removing the box

- Remove the box with box hands in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 91 as far as the stop **B**.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

Removing/inserting the box

- Remove the box with both hands in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 91 after passing the stop **B**.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

Inserting/removal lateral carrier rails

You can insert/remove the lateral carrier rails when the box has been removed as far as the stop **B** » Fig. 91.

- Insert the catches on the lateral carrier rail underneath the front edge of the box **1** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92.
- Secure the other side of the lateral carrier rail in the hole **2** the direction of the arrow.

Removal is carried out in the reverse order.

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the storage box is 2.5 kg.
- Prevent objects stored in the storage box from slipping at all times using the lateral carrier rails.
- Before driving, the box must be pushed in so that it is not damaged.

Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)

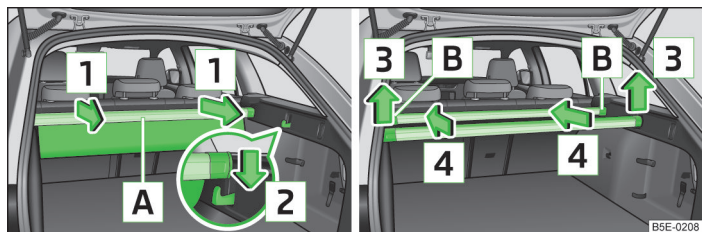


Fig. 93 Multifunction box: pulling out/pushing in

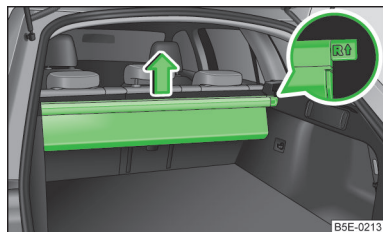


Fig. 94
Removing the multifunction box



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 79.

The multifunction box under the roll-up luggage compartment cover is provided for the storage of clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

Pulling out

- Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment » page 82.
- Grasp the rear bar **A** » Fig. 93 with both hands and pull out the complete box in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow **2** all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

- Remove the rear bar from the hook in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 93.
- Push in the complete multifunction box in the direction of the arrow **4**.
- Place the rear bar against the front bar and press it on at both ends **B**.
- Fold back the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Removing/inserting

- Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 85.
- Remove the multifunction box from the receptacle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 94.

Insertion takes place in the reverse order.

- When inserting, push the end of the bar marked **R** ↑ into the right receptacle and the end of the bar marked **L** ↓ into the left receptacle. The arrows should be pointing forward » Fig. 94.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Variable loading floor in luggage compartment



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor	89
Folding up variable loading floor	90
Dividing the luggage compartment	90 ▶

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » [page 89](#).

i Note

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects, for example, the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover, roof cross bars, etc. » [page 85](#).

Positions of the variable loading floor

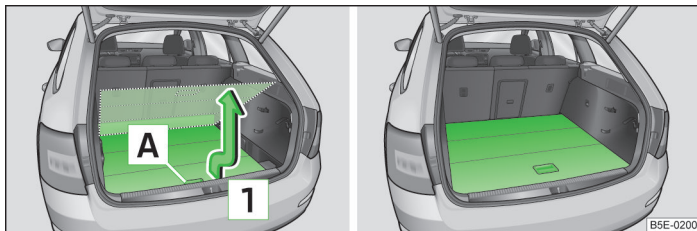


Fig. 95 Setting the variable loading floor to the upper position/variable loading floor in the upper position

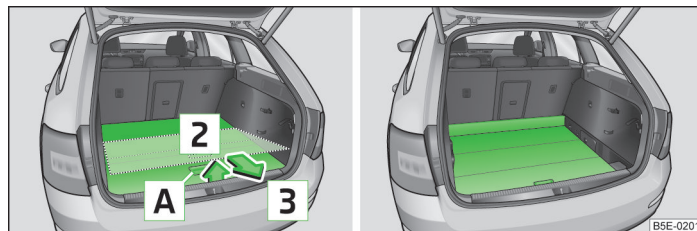


Fig. 96 Setting the variable loading floor to the lower position/variable loading floor in the lower position



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on [page 88](#).

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Setting to the upper position

- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » [Fig. 95](#).
- Lift the variable loading floor about 20 cm, pull it to yourself and raise it in the direction of the arrow **1** to the level of the roll-up luggage compartment cover until it clicks.

After an audible click, the variable loading floor can be stowed in the upper position by pushing it forward.

Setting to the lower position

- Check that there are no objects in the space under the variable loading floor.
- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » [Fig. 96](#).
- Lift the variable loading floor about 10 cm in the direction of the arrow **2** and pull it back in the direction of the arrow **3**.

The variable loading floor moves automatically to the lower position where it can be stored by pressing it forward.

The resulting space under the variable loading floor set to the upper position can be used to store objects.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions » [page 90](#) or used for dividing the luggage compartment » [page 90](#).

Folding up variable loading floor

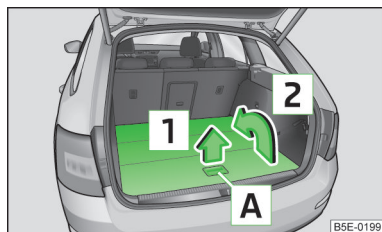


Fig. 97
fold up variable loading floor

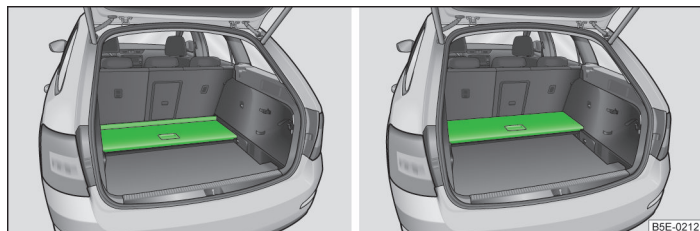


Fig. 98 Variable loading floor folded up: in the lower position/in the upper position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 88.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in the lower and the upper position » Fig. 98.

- Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 97 and lift in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow **2**. ■

Dividing the luggage compartment

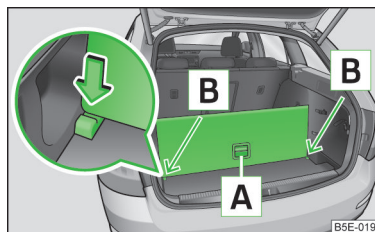


Fig. 99
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 88.

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor in the lower and upper position.

Raise the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 99.

Push the rear edge of the variable loading floor into the grooves **B** in the direction of the arrow.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves **B**. ■

Net partition (Octavia Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- | | | |
|---|-------|------|
| Using the net partition behind the rear seats | _____ | 91 |
| Using the net partition behind the front seats | _____ | 92 |
| Removing and installing the net partition housing | _____ | 92 ► |

! WARNING

- Check that the crossbar of the net partition is hung firmly into the receptacles **D** » Fig. 100 on page 91 and **C** » Fig. 102 on page 92.
- The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely interlocked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment if there is sudden braking – risk of injury.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. It is only then that the three-point seat belt for the middle seat can reliably fulfil its function.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

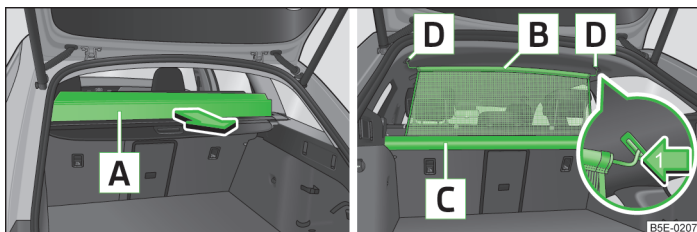


Fig. 100 Folding out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover/net partition behind the rear seats in the pulled-out state

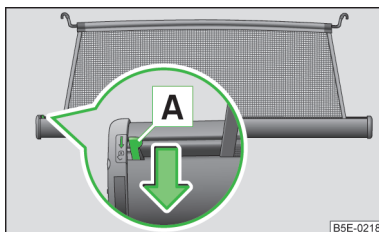


Fig. 101
Net partition: Release lever



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 90.

Pulling out

- Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 100.
- Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar **B** from the housing **C**.
- Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles **D**.
- On the other side, press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **1** and hook it into the appropriate receptacle **D**.
- Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow.

Folding

- Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 100.
- Press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow **1** and remove it from the receptacles **D**, first on one side, then on the other side.
- Hold the crossbar **B** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **C** without being damaged.
- Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow.



CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 101.



Note

If you wish to use the entire luggage compartment, the roll-up luggage compartment cover can be removed » page 85.

Using the net partition behind the front seats

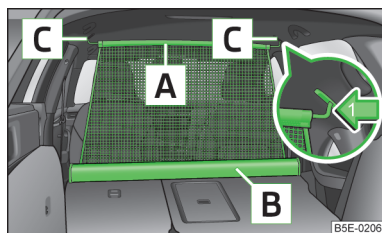


Fig. 102
Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 90.

Pulling out

- Fold the rear seats forward » page 69.
- Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar **A** from the housing **B** » Fig. 102.
- Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles **C**.
- On the other side, press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 1 and hook it into the appropriate receptacle **C**.

Folding

- Press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the receptacles **C**, first on one side, then on the other side.
- Hold the crossbar **A** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **B** without being damaged.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 69.

CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 101 on page 91.

Removing and installing the net partition housing

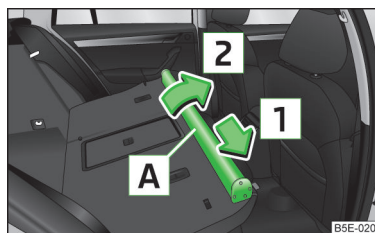


Fig. 103
Rear seats: Removing the net partition housing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 90.

Removing

- Fold the rear seats forward » page 69.
- Open the rear right door » page 34.
- Push the net partition housing **A** in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 103.

Install

- Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
- Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 103 as far as the stop.
- Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 69.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points	93
Roof load	94 ►

! WARNING

- The items which you transport on the roof rack must be reliably attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA.
- If other roof rack systems are used or if the roof bars are not fitted correctly, any resulting damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. Therefore observe the supplied fitting instructions for the roof rack system are observed.
- On models fitted with a sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

i Note

The removed roof rack for the Octavia Estate can be stowed in the stowage compartment under the variable loading floor » [page 85](#), *Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover and roof racks*.

Attachment points

Does not apply to the Octavia Estate.

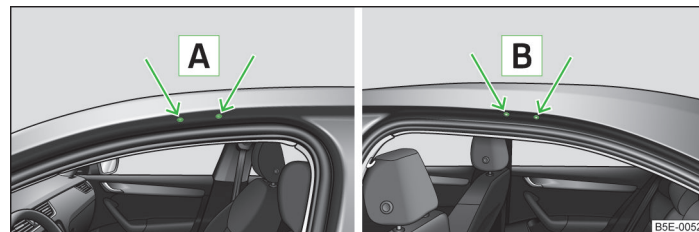


Fig. 104 Attachment points for roof bars



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 92.

Installation location of the attachment points for roof bars » [Fig. 104](#):

- A** Front attachment points
- B** Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

! CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 92.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions. ■

Heating and air conditioning system

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlets	96
Using the air conditioning system economically	96
Operational problems	97

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » [page 100](#) or for Climatronic » [page 103](#).

WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

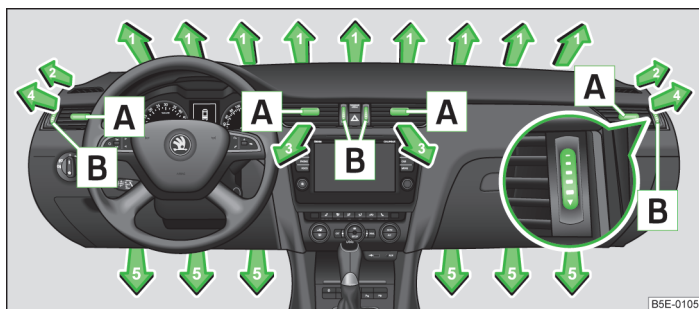
CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!

Note

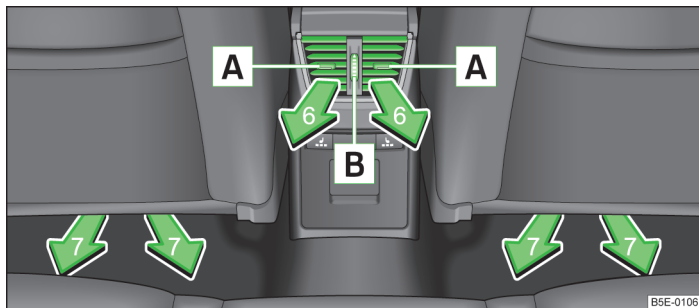
- The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets



BSE-0105

Fig. 105 Air vents at the front



BSE-0106

Fig. 106 Air vents at the rear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 95.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air will flow out of the air outlet vents according to the setting of the regulator of the heating or the air conditioning system and the atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3, 4** » Fig. 105 and **6** » Fig. 106 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Changing the air flow direction

- To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 105 or » Fig. 106 upward or downward.
- To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 105 or » Fig. 106 to the left or right.

Open/close

- Turn the wheel **B** » Fig. 105 or » Fig. 106 upwards or downwards.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6
	4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 5, 6, 7

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with any objects, of any kind.

Using the air conditioning system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 95.

The compressor on the air conditioning system uses power from the engine when in cooling mode which will effect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be switched on while travelling when the window is open.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved » [page 125](#), *Economical and environmentally friendly driving*.

Operational problems

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 95.**

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

- One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » [page 232](#).
- The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » [page 10](#).

If you are not able to resolve the operational fault yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and get assistance from a ŠKODA Specialist garage.

Heating

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	97
Adjusting	98
Recirculated air mode	98

Control elements

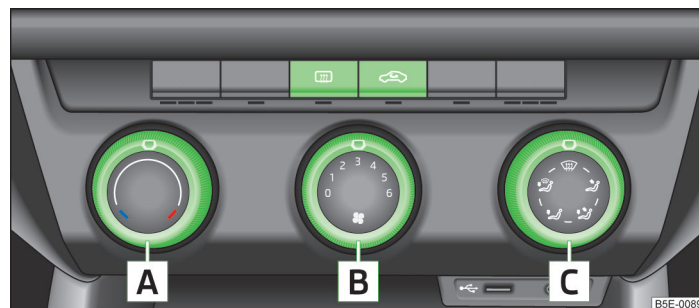


Fig. 107 Heating: Control elements

 **First read and observe the introductory information given on page 97.**

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 107:

- A** Set the temperature (turn to the left: Turn to the right to reduce the temperature: increase temperature)
- B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blower off, stage 6: the highest blower stage)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » [page 96](#)
-  Switch the rear window heater on/off » [page 56](#)
-  Open/close the fresh air supply (recirculation) » [page 98](#)

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Adjusting



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 97.

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial » Fig. 107 on page 97			Button 	Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 105 on page 96
					
Defrosting the windscreen and side windows	To the right up to the stop	4-5		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windscreen and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	3-5		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Rapid heating	To the right up to the stop	4-5		Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2-4		Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	1-6		Do not switch on	Opening

a) Warmer air is directed to the footwell than to the upper part of the body.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents 3 » Fig. 105 on page 96 in the open position in all operating modes.



Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control  » Fig. 107 on page 97 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

Recirculated air mode



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 97.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the symbol button .

The warning light below the button lights up.

➤ Press the symbol button  again.

The warning light below the button goes out.



WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.



Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	99
Setting	100
Recirculated air mode	100

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ **A/C** » Fig. 108 on page 99 switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature above approx. +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-6).

Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents and large differences in temperature, for example when getting out of the vehicle, can result in chills in sensitive persons.

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

i Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a ŠKODA specialist garage once every year.

Control elements

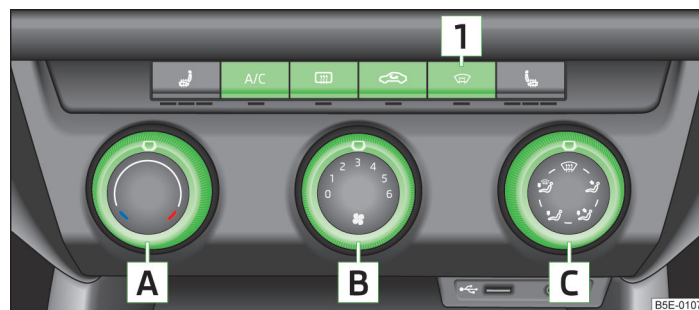


Fig. 108 Air conditioning: Control elements

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 99.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 108:

- A** Set the temperature (turn to the left: Turn to the right to reduce the temperature: increase temperature)
- B** Set the blower stage (stage 0: Blower off, stage 6: the highest blower stage)
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet » page 96
- 1** Depending on equipment:
 - ☞ Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 56
 - ☞ Switching the auxiliary heater on/off » page 105
- A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off (The indicator light in or underneath the button lights up/goes out)
- ☞ Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 56
- ☞ Open/close the fresh air supply (recirculation) » page 100

i Note

The warning light in the symbol button **A/C** lights after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system are met » page 99. By lighting up of the warning light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

Setting



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 99.

Recommended basic settings of the control elements of the air conditioning system for the respective operating modes:

Set-up	Setting of the control dial » Fig. 108 on page 99			Button » Fig. 108 on page 99		Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 105 on page 96
	A	B	C	A/C		
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows ^{a)}	Desired temperature	4-6		Automatically switched on ^{b)}	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Rapid heating	To the right up to the stop	4-6		Switched off	Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	1-4		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening
Rapid cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 6, then 2 - 3		Activated	Automatically switched on ^{c)}	Opening
Comfortable cooling	Desired temperature	1-3		Activated	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode - ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Switched off	Do not switch on	Opening

^{a)} We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.

^{b)} The automatic activation can be turned off by pressing the symbol button A/C.

^{c)} The automatic activation can be turned off by pressing the symbol button .

^{d)} Warmer air is directed to the footwell than to the upper part of the body.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents 3 » Fig. 105 on page 96 in the open position in all operating modes.



The warning light below the button lights up.

➤ Press the symbol button again.

The warning light below the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 99.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the symbol button .

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 108 on page 99 is turned to position . Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button . ▶

! WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements	101
Automatic mode	102
Switching the cooling system on/off	102
Setting temperature	102
Automatic recirculated air mode	103
Controlling blower	103
Defrosting windscreen	104

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ **A/C** » Fig. 109 on page 101 switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature above approx. +2 °C.

The cooling system is switched off at a high coolant temperature in order to provide cooling at a high load of the engine.

Control elements

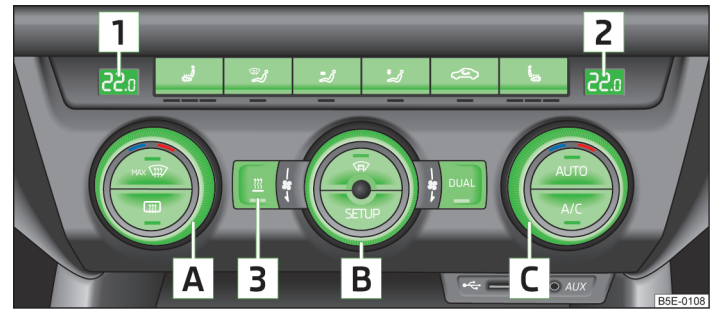


Fig. 109 Climatronic: Control elements



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 109:

- A** Adjust the temperature for the left side or for both sides » page 102
- B** Adjust the blower speed » page 103
- C** Adjust the temperature for the right side » page 102
- 1** Display the temperature setting for the left side
- 2** Display the temperature setting for the right side
- 3** Depending on equipment:
 - Switching the auxiliary heater on/off » page 105
 - Switching Climatronic system off
- Control the seat heater on/off » page 105
- Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 67
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Switch automatic air distribution control on/off » page 103
- Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 67
- Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off » page 104
- Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 56
- Switch the windscreen heater on/off » page 56

- SETUP** Adjust Climatronic in the Infotainment
- DUAL** Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off » [page 102](#)
- AUTO** Switching automatic mode on » [page 102](#)
- A/C** Switch the cooling system on/off » [page 102](#)

Note

The interior temperature sensor is located between the symbol buttons  and .

SETUP. Do not stick anything on or cover the sensor, otherwise it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic.

Automatic mode



First read and observe the introductory information given on [page 101](#).

Automatic mode works in three modes - weak, medium, and intensive.

Setting the individual operating modes » *operating instructions for Infotainment, chapter Other functions.*

Climatronic is set to the medium setting at the factory.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year

- Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22 °C.
- Press the symbol button **AUTO** » [Fig. 109](#) on page 101.
- Move the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » [Fig. 105](#) on page 96 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode.

The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed.

Switching the cooling system on/off



First read and observe the introductory information given on [page 101](#).

- Press the symbol button **A/C**.

The warning light in the button lights up.

- Press the symbol button **A/C** again.

The warning light in the button goes out.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature



First read and observe the introductory information given on [page 101](#).

The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

For both sides

- Turn the control dial **A** » [Fig. 109](#) on page 101 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** does not light up.

For the right side

- Turn the control dial **C** » [Fig. 109](#) on page 101 to the left or right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** lights up.

If the warning light in the symbol button **DUAL** is lit, the temperature for both sides cannot be set with the control dial **A**. This function can be resumed by pressing the symbol button **DUAL**. The warning light in the button goes out.

The interior temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If a temperature lower than +16 °C is selected, a blue symbol lights up on the control dial.

If a temperature higher than +29 °C is selected, a red symbol lights up on the control dial.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Automatic recirculated air mode



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

Recirculated air mode largely prevents polluted air from outside the vehicle getting into the vehicle, for example, when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched off.

If the concentration of pollutants decreases to the normal level, the air distribution control is automatically switched off so that fresh air can be guided into the vehicle interior.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior. When the automatic air distribution control is switched on, an air quality sensor measures the concentration of pollutants in the drawn in air.

If the air quality sensor does not switch on automatic recirculated air mode when there is an unpleasant smell, you can switch in on manually.

Switching on/off

➤ Press the symbol button .

The warning light below the button lights up.

➤ Press the symbol button  again; the warning light below the button goes out; if necessary, press the symbol button **AUTO** again.

Switching on and off is also possible in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Other functions*.

WARNING

Do not leave recirculated air mode on over a longer period of time, as "stale" air can cause fatigue of the driver and passengers, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

- If the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button **MAX** . Press the symbol button **AUTO** when the windscreen is demisted.
- The automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Controlling blower



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

The blower stage can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

➤ Turn the control dial **B** » Fig. 109 on page 101 to the left or right to increase or decrease the blower speed.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed in the control dial **B** when the respective number of warning lights come on.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

Switching on/off

- Press the symbol button » Fig. 109 on page 101.
- Press the symbol button again or press the symbol button **AUTO**.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents 1 » Fig. 105 on page 96. The temperature control is controlled automatically. ■

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off	105
Radio remote control	105

Conditions for switching on the auxiliary heating (parking heating and ventilation), hereinafter referred to only as auxiliary heating.

- ✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- ✓ A preset time is enabled in the Infotainment.
- ✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning icon is not lit in the display of the instrument cluster).
- ✓ A comfortable temperature is set.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.
- ✓ The air outlet vents are open.
- ✓ The air outlet is set to position or .

Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

Auxiliary heating (parking heating)

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) can be used when stationary, when the engine is switched off to preheat the vehicle and while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heater (parking heater) functions in connection with the air-conditioning system or Climatronic.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) also warms up the engine.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. The coolant warms up the air, which (if the blower speed is not set to zero) flows into the passenger compartment.



WARNING

- The auxiliary heating (parking heating) must never be operated in closed rooms – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating (parking heating) must not be running during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, if you wish to operate the auxiliary heating (parking heating), do not park the vehicle in such a way that the exhaust gases can come into contact with highly flammable materials (e.g. dry grass) or easily inflammable substances (e.g. spilt fuel) – risk of fire.



CAUTION

- The running auxiliary heating (parking heating) consumes fuel from the vehicle tank and automatically controls the filling level. If only a low quantity of fuel is present in the fuel tank, the function of the auxiliary heating is blocked.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating and ventilation is running, the vehicle battery discharges. If the auxiliary heating and ventilation has been operated several times over a longer period, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres in order to recharge the vehicle battery.



Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the auxiliary heating and cooling system operates properly. ■

Switching on/off

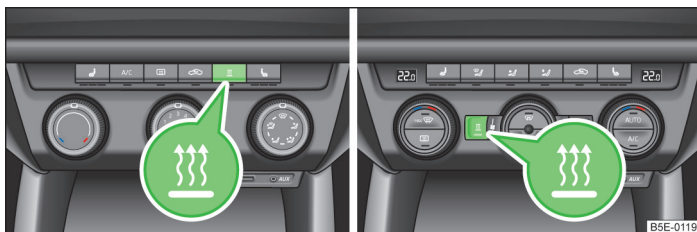


Fig. 110 Button for switching on/off the system directly on the operating part of the air conditioning/Climatronic

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 104.

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) can be switched on/off as follows.

Manually switching on

- using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button lights up [Fig. 110](#);
- ON** by using the radio remote control [page 105](#).

Manually switching off

- using the button on the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic. The warning light in the button goes out [Fig. 110](#);
- OFF** by using the radio remote control [page 105](#).

After switching the system off, the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heater.

After switching off the auxiliary heating, the coolant pump runs for a short period.

Switching on automatically

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) is switched on according to the setting in the Infotainment [Operating instructions for Infotainment](#), chapter *Setting other functions and vehicle systems*.

When automatic switching on is activated, the indicator light in the symbol button lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

Switching off automatically

The auxiliary heating (parking heating) is switched off:

- according to the setting in the Infotainment [Operating instructions for Infotainment](#), chapter *Setting other functions and vehicle systems*,
- if the fuel level has reached the reserve area (the warning icon lights up),
- if the charge state of the vehicle battery is too low [page 202](#).

Radio remote control

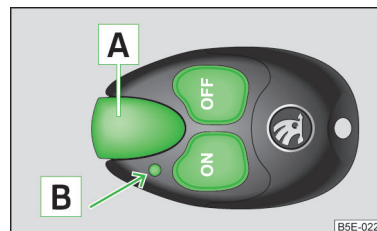


Fig. 111 Auxiliary heater: Radio remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 104.

Explanation of graphic

- Aerial
- Warning light
- Switch on the auxiliary heating
- Switch off the auxiliary heating

The transmitter and the battery are housed in the housing of the remote control. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertical, with the aerial pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback:

Display warning light B » Fig. 111	Description
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating was switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 226.

CAUTION

The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight. ■

Communication and multimedia

Communication

Introductory information

For more information about controlling hands-free equipment, multimedia, Navigation, etc. see » *operating instructions for Infotainment*.

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please refer to a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibilities of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems that have a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The possible reasons for this are.

- no external aerial.
- external aerial incorrectly installed.
- transmission power greater than 10 watts.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle. Use the telephone system only to such an extent that you are in full control of your vehicle at any time.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.
- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision – risk of injury.
- In the event of air transport, the Bluetooth® function for the hands-free system must be switched off by a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation. You can ask an authorised ŠKODA Partner whether your telephone is compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

i Note

We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Partner.

Declaration of conformity

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. hereby declares that the ŠKODA Infotainment systems meet the basic requirements and additional provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.



Warning statement

Valid for infotainment systems ŠKODA.

FCC § 15.19 Labelling requirements

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC § 15.21 Information to user

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

INDUSTRY CANADA Statements

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Phone Box

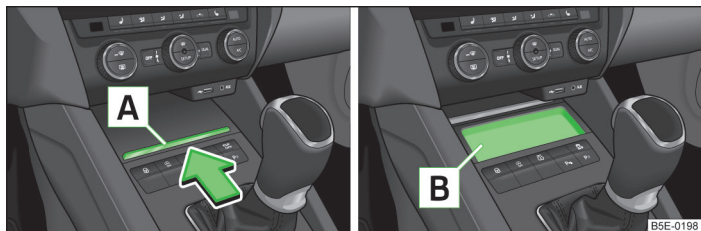


Fig. 112 Phonebox

The Phone Box is located in the storage compartment in the front centre console » [page 72](#).

Open/close

- Press on the lid edge **A** in the direction of the arrow.
- Place the mobile phone on its back on the induction plate in the storage compartment **B**.

Closing takes place in the reverse order.

The vehicle body partially interferes with the telephone signal and makes use of the mobile telephone somewhat more difficult in regions with a weak signal.

The current consumption and the telephone battery discharges more quickly.

To reduce the effects of these defects, an induction plate is located on the bottom of the stowage compartment in the centre console » [Fig. 61](#) on [page 72](#).

The induction plate generates a induction field for the telephone signal which is directed to the plate on the roof aerial where it is amplified.

The mobile phone kept in the stowage compartment with the underside on the induction plate can use a signal boosted by around 20 %.

The use of the Phone Box has the following advantages.

- The transmitting and receiving power of the telephone is improved.
- The discharge of the phone battery is reduced.
- The electromagnetic radiation is reduced in the vehicle interior.

The Phone Box compartment for the phone does not establish a connection between the mobile device and the vehicle systems. The mobile phone and the device can be connected via Bluetooth® or via a USB cable.



WARNING

For safety reasons, the storage compartment with the mobile phone must always be closed when driving.

Multimedia

Operating Infotainment from the multifunction steering wheel

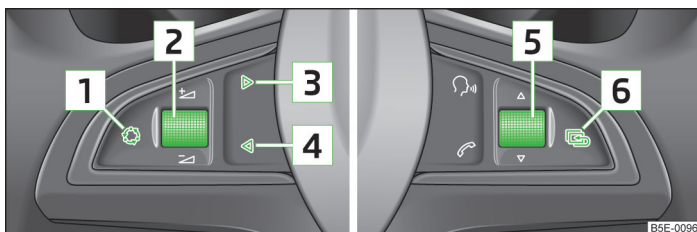


Fig. 113 Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons and dials

Buttons and dials are located on the multifunction steering wheel for operating some Infotainment functions » Fig. 113.

The buttons and dials operate the functions for the current operating mode of the Infotainment.

Button/ adjust- ment wheel	Action	Radio, traffic information	Audio, Video, DVD, DVD menu	Navigation
1	Press briefly	Change source, change frequency range		
1	Press button for a long period of time	Change the audio source and call up the last context status (e.g. the last radio station that was played or title ^{a)})		
2	Press briefly	Switch off/on tone ^{b)} Play the video or DVD Video title		
2	Turn upwards	Increase Volume ^{d)} of the current source		
2	Turn downwards	Decrease Volume ^{d)} of the current source		
3	Press briefly	Switch to the next radio station stored in the station list or to the radio station stored in the preset list ^{d)} Switch to the next stored traffic report Interrupt traffic report	Switch to the next track ^{a)} Switch to the next chapter ^{e)}	Function based on the current audio source
3	Press button for a long period of time	Interrupt traffic report	Fast forward ^{a)}	
4	Press briefly	Switch to the previous radio station stored in the station list or to the radio station stored in the preset list Switch to the previous stored traffic report Interrupt traffic report	Switch to the previous track within 5 seconds of the track playback, switch to the start of the track after 5 s ^{a)} Switch to the start of the chapter ^{e)}	

Button/ adjust- ment wheel	Action	Radio, traffic information	Audio, Video, DVD, DVD menu	Navigation
4	Press button for a long period of time	Interrupt traffic report	Fast rewind ^{a)}	
5	Press briefly	Interrupt traffic report	without function	Repeat or clarify the last navigation announcement or select from the list of recent destinations ^{d)}
5	Turn upwards	Display the list of accessible stations Scroll up Traffic report	Switch to the previous track ^{a)} Switch to the start of the chapter ^{e)}	Select stop of route guidance or display the list of recent destinations ^{d)}
5	Turn downwards	Display the list of accessible stations Scroll down Traffic report	Switch to the next track ^{a)} Switch to the next chapter ^{e)}	
6	Press briefly	Call up main menu on information display		

a) Does not apply for AUX.

b) The sound is turned on again by pressing the adjustment wheel **2** or rotating the adjustment wheel **2**. Playback of the navigation announcements is not turned off.

c) If the system plays audible messages in voice mode dialogues of the device, the volume of the audible message is affected.

d) Context-dependent choice.

e) Applies to DVD video. Operation via the multifunction steering wheel works only if the **Audio** menu is selected in the information display.

i Note

- If the ignition and the side lights are switched on, the buttons and dials on the multifunction steering wheel are also illuminated.
- For safety reasons, the video display is switched off at speeds over 5 km/h. The unit continues to play the soundtrack.
- The set of loudspeakers in the vehicle is matched to a power output of the Infotainment of 4x20 W.
- Vehicles with the CANTON sound system equipment are fitted with a loud-speaker set including centre speaker and bass. The loudspeaker set is tuned with a external 10 channel amp for a total output of 570 W.

USB-, AUX- and MEDIA IN inputs

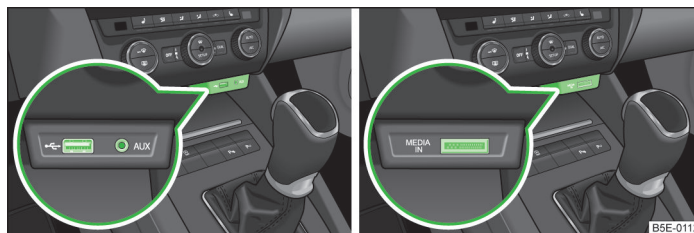


Fig. 114 USB- and AUX inputs/MEDIA IN input

The USB and AUX inputs or MEDIA IN input are located above the stowage compartment in the front centre console» Fig. 114.

A data carrier or system can be connected to the USB/AUX input either directly or via a connection cable from the ŠKODA range of original accessories.

The USB input can be used to charge the batteries of most devices which allow charging via USB.

The MEDIA IN input can be used to connect a system via a connecting cable from the ŠKODA range original accessories. ■

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Steering

Introduction

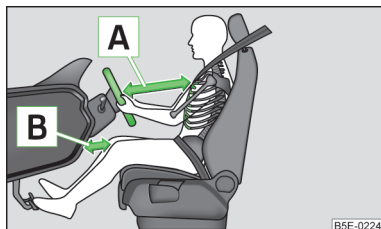


Fig. 115
Correct seated position for the driver

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the steering wheel position _____ 113

Power steering _____ 113

! WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- Position the steering wheel so that there is a gap of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the chest [A] » Fig. 115, and that the distance between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag is at least 10 cm [B]. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the position of the steering wheel cannot accidentally change during the journey – risk of accident!

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.

! WARNING

- When driving, the ignition key must always be in the position [2] » Fig. 117 on page 114 (ignition switched on) without the engine running. This position is indicated by the warning lights coming on. If this is not the case, it could result in unexpected locking of the steering wheel – risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise the steering wheel could block – risk of accident!

i Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car. ■

Adjusting the steering wheel position

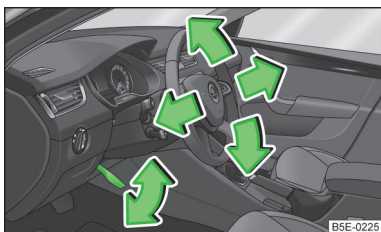


Fig. 116
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 112.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 63.
- Pull the lever below the steering wheel down » Fig. 116.
- Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
- Push the lever upwards to the stop.

Power steering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 112.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

It is still possible to fully steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (vehicle being towed in). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

Steering force assistance can be influenced by the selection of driving mode » page 143.

Starting and stopping the engine with the key



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobiliser	114
Ignition lock	114
Starting the engine	114
Stopping the engine	115

Starting and stopping the engine on vehicles with the KESSY system » page 115.

The engine can only be started with the proper original ŠKODA.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.



WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could, for example, start the engine – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas – risk of life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.



CAUTION

- The starter may only be operated, if the engine is not running. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- If the engine also does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or the control unit for the glow plug system or glow plug system relay and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace, if necessary » page 230 or seek assistance from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads as long as the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not tow start the engine – danger of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 222](#).
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.



For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Electronic immobiliser



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on [page 113](#).

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

- I** Immobilizer active.
- S** IMMOBILIZER ACTIVE

Ignition lock

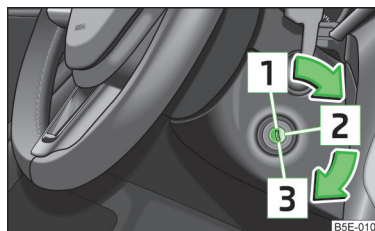


Fig. 117
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on [page 113](#).

Petrol engines » [Fig. 117](#)

- 1** Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
- 2** Ignition switched on
- 3** Starting engine

Diesel engines » [Fig. 117](#)

- 1** Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked
- 2** Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
- 3** Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and the key cannot or can only be turned with difficulty into the position **2** » [Fig. 117](#), move the steering wheel back and forth and the steering lock will unlock.

Starting the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on [page 113](#).

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine just after the indicator light  goes out. ▶

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Place the gearshift lever into neutral or place the selector lever in the position **P** or **N** and firmly put on the handbrake.
- Switch on the ignition **[2]** » Fig. 117 on page 114.
- Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
- Turn the key into position **[3]** as far as it will go and release immediately – do not touch the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position **[2]**.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position **[1]**. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

- Release the handbrake.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

1 Press the clutch to start.

6 PRESS CLUTCH

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is displayed on the display.

1 Apply the brake to start.

6 APPLY BRAKE

Stopping the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **1** on page 113.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position **[1]** » Fig. 117 on page 114.

For vehicle with an automatic gearbox, the ignition key can only be pulled out if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Starting and stopping the engine – KESSY



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking and locking the steering – KESSY	116
Switching on the ignition	117
Starting the engine	117
Switching off the ignition	117
Switching off the engine	117
Emergency start-up of the engine	118
Emergency ignition shutoff system	118

The KESSY system makes it possible to switch the ignition on/off and to start/stop the engine without actively using the key.

A key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering, switch on the steering and start the vehicle.



WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could, for example, start the engine – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases of the engine contain besides the odourless and colourless carbon monoxide a poisonous gas – risk of life! Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

! CAUTION

- The starter may only be operated, if the engine is not running. The starter or engine can be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running.
- If the engine also does not start after the second attempt, the fuse for the electric fuel pump (in petrol engines) or the control unit for the glow plug system or glow plug system relay and fuel pump (in diesel engines) could be faulty. Check the fuse and replace, if necessary » [page 230](#) or seek assistance from a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads as long as the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not tow start the engine – danger of damaging the engine! On vehicles with a catalytic converter, unburnt fuel may get into the catalytic converter where it may ignite. This in turn may damage the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 222](#).
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

i Note

- After pressing the starter button while the steering is locked, the steering is unlocked, the electrical components are activated (e.g. Infotainment, etc.) and the ignition is switched on.
- If you do not leave the vehicle after locking the steering and wish to unlock the steering again, press the starter button. At the same time, electrical components are activated (e.g. Infotainment etc.) and the Ignition is switched on.
- The KESSY system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » [page 118](#).
- The steering is not unlocked or locked if the starter button is repeatedly pressed at short intervals.

Unlocking and locking the steering – KESSY



Fig. 118
Starter button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 115.

Unlocking

- Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
- Close the driver's door.

The steering is unlocked within 2 seconds.

Locking

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch off the engine or the ignition by pressing the starter button » [Fig. 118](#).
- Open the driver door.

The steering is locked. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle is locked.

If the steering is locked and the KESSY system does not manage to unlock the steering lock the first time (e.g. if the wheels are resting against the curb), the attempt will be repeated twice by the system.

If the steering lock is then not unlocked, the following information is shown in the instrument cluster display.

i Move the steering wheel!

Ⓢ MOVE STEERING WHEEL

Slightly move the steering and the system will complete 3 more attempts to unlock after 2 seconds. At the same time, the indicator light 🚦 flashes.

Eliminate the possible cause which is preventing the unlocking and then repeat the attempt to unlock the steering.

Switching on the ignition



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 115.

The steering must be unlocked to switch on the ignition.

- Briefly press the starter button » [Fig. 118](#) on page 116 and the ignition is switched on.

If the ignition is switched on and the driver's door is opened, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

-  **Ignition on!**
-  **IGNITION STILL ON**

Starting the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 115.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light  comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine just after the indicator light  goes out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

- Place the gearshift lever into neutral or place the selector lever in the position **P** or **N** and firmly put on the handbrake.
- Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
- Press the starter button » [Fig. 118](#) on page 116 briefly – the engine starts.
- Release the handbrake.

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

-  **Press the clutch to start.**
-  **PRESS CLUTCH**

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message is displayed on the display.

-  **Apply the brake to start.**
-  **APPLY BRAKE**

Switching off the ignition



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 115.

- Briefly press the starter button » [Fig. 118](#) on page 116 and the ignition is switched off.

The ignition can be switched off up to a speed of 2 km/h.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed after switching off the ignition, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with an **automatic gearbox**, the selector lever must be in the position **P** or **N** and the brake pedal must not be depressed, otherwise the system would try to start.

Switching off the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 115.

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch off the engine by pressing the starter button » [Fig. 118](#) on page 116, doing so switches off the ignition at the same time.

Emergency start-up of the engine

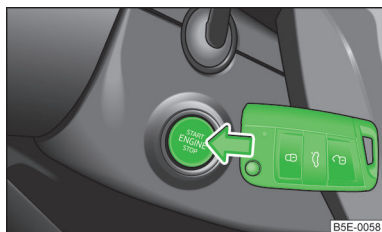


Fig. 119
Emergency start-up of engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 115.

If the authorisation check for the key fails, the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Key not found.

NO KEY

The emergency start-up must be completed.

➤ Press the starter button » Fig. 119 and then hold the key to the starter button.

Or

➤ Press the starter button directly with the key.

Note

During an emergency start-up of the engine, the key bit must face the starter button » Fig. 119.

Emergency ignition shutoff system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 115.

In an emergency, it is possible to switch off the ignition even at speeds greater than 2 km/h, by using the "emergency ignition shutoff system".

➤ Press the starter button » Fig. 118 on page 116 for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

Brakes

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information for braking _____ 118

Handbrake _____ 119

WARNING

- Greater physical effort for braking is required when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. If you fail to do so, the functionality of the brake booster can be impaired – risk of accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 125.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information for braking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 118.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before negotiating a steep downhill section, reduce the speed, shift down into the next lower gear (manual gearbox) or select a lower drive position (automatic gearbox). As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted. If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a SKODA specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty. Visit a SKODA specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately as you will not know how great the damage is.

Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » [page 14](#),  **Brake system**.

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake



Fig. 120
Centre console: Handbrake



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 118.

Apply

» Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Loosening

- » Pull the handbrake lever up slightly and **at the same time** push in the locking button » [Fig. 120](#).
- » Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light  lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

 **Release the parking brake!**

 **PARKING BRAKE ON PLEASE RELEASE**

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.



WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Manual shifting of gears and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual shifting of gears _____ 120

Pedals _____ 120

Manual shifting of gears

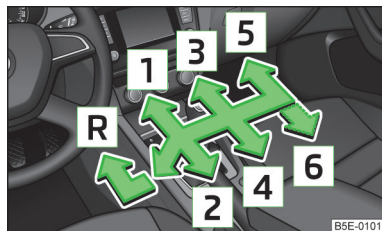


Fig. 121
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or
6 gear manual gearbox



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 120.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Observe the recommended gear » page 23.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 120.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use footmats from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

! WARNING

No objects are allowed in the driver's footwell – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedal!

Automatic transmission



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever _____ 121

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) _____ 122

Starting-off and driving _____ 123

Malfunfunction _____ 123 ▶

! WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the forward driving mode – risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!
- When the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, you need to hold the vehicle with the brake pedal in mode **D**, **S** or **R**. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.



Fig. 123
Shiftlock button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 120.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster **1** » Fig. 122.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 122.

P - Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Before selecting the mode **R** from mode **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal and at the same time press the Shiftlock » Fig. 123.

N - Neutral

The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D/S - Forward driving mode (normal programme)/Forward driving mode (sport programme)

Switch between the modes by moving the selector lever to the sprung position ▽ » Fig. 122, if necessary, by selecting the driving mode » page 143.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode » page 143.

If you select the driving mode **Sport** or **Normal**, and move the selector lever to the position **D/S**, the gearbox is set automatically to mode **S** or **D**.

Modes and use of selector lever

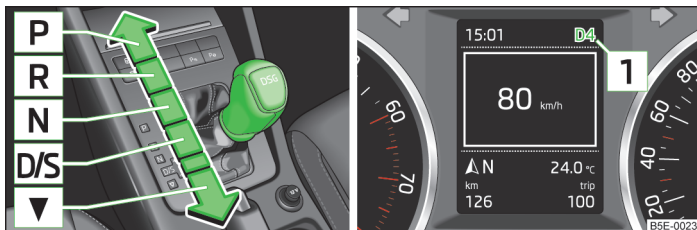


Fig. 122 Selector lever/Instrument cluster display

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds than in mode **D**.

E - Economical driving mode

If you select the driving mode **Eco** » page 143, and move the selector lever to the position **D/S**, the gearbox is set automatically to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

In mode **E**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at lower engine speeds than in mode **D**.

Releasing selector lever from mode **P** or **N** (selector lever lock)

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion. The indicator light » page 18 illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while the pressing lock button at the same time » Fig. 123.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will click into place if the lever is in the position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

i Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

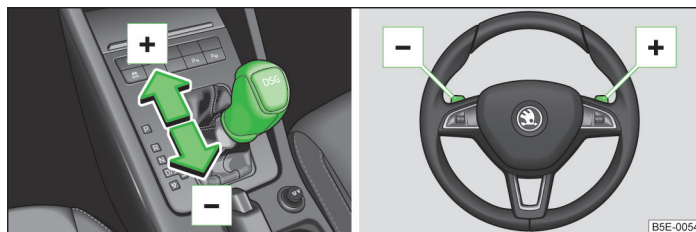


Fig. 124 Selector lever and multifunction steering wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 120.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display of the instrument cluster **1** » Fig. 122 on page 121.

Switching to manual shifting

➤ Push the selector lever to the right out of position **D/S**.

Shifting up gears

➤ Press the selector lever forwards **+** » Fig. 124.

➤ Pull the right rocker switch **+** » Fig. 124 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears

➤ Press the selector lever backwards **-** » Fig. 124.

➤ Pull the left rocker switch **-** » Fig. 124 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual shifting in position **D/S**

➤ Pull one of the rocker switches **+/+** briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 124.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches **+/+** for more than 1 Minute, manual shifting of gears is deactivated. You can also deactivate the temporary switch to manual shifting by pulling the right rocker switch **+** towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » [page 118](#).

Starting-off and driving



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 120.

Starting off

- Start the engine.
- Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the lock button » [Fig. 123](#) on page 121.
- Move the selector lever into the desired position » [page 121](#) and then release the lock button.
- Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop

- Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking

- Fully depress and hold the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Press and hold the lock button » [Fig. 123](#) on page 121.
- Move the selector lever into the position **P** and then release the lock button.

Driving in neutral position in mode E (freewheel)

- Move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.
- Select the **Eco** driving mode » [page 143](#), *Driving mode*.
- Take the foot off the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you briefly depress the brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch  towards the steering wheel » [page 122](#), *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

Launch control

The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

- Switch off the TCS.
- Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
- Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
- Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

Reactivate the TCS when the desired speed is reached.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.



WARNING

- Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Malfunction



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 120.

Emergency programme

The transmission switches to the emergency programme, if there is a fault in system of the automatic gearbox. ►

Emergency operation can make itself apparent by the following, for example.

- Only certain gears are selected.
- The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
- Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

Gearbox overheating

The gearbox may, for example, become too hot due to frequent starting or stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning light » [page 13](#),  *Clutches of the automatic gearbox too hot*.

Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, blown fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be moved. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » [page 228](#).

Note

If the gearbox has switched to emergency mode, visit a ŠKODA specialist garage. ■

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine	124
New tyres	125
New brake pads	125 ■

New engine

 **First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.**

The engine has to be run in during the first 1500 kilometres.

Up to 1000 kilometres

- Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
- No full throttle.
- Avoid high engine speeds.

- Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 up to 1500 kilometres

Gradually increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx. 1500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily **high engine speeds** even after the running-in period is complete. The maximum permissible engine speed is marked by the start of the red scale area of the revolutions counter.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. **Very** high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » .

With vehicles with a manual gearbox, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » [page 23](#).

CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in the sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm and thus cause engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.
- All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save on fuel, reduces engine noises and protects the environment. ■

New tyres



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.

New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first. Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 124.

New brake pads initially do not provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Economical and environmentally friendly driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Looking ahead	125
Shifting gears and saving energy	126
Avoiding full throttle	126
Reducing idling	126
Avoiding short distances	127
Convenience consumers	127
Checking tyre inflation pressure	127
Avoiding unnecessary ballast	127
Regular maintenance	128
Environmental compatibility	128

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:

- your personal style of driving.
- the conditions under which your vehicle is use,
- technical requirements.

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, the weather and driving style.

The optimal engine speed should be obtained when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

Looking ahead



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Shifting gears and saving energy

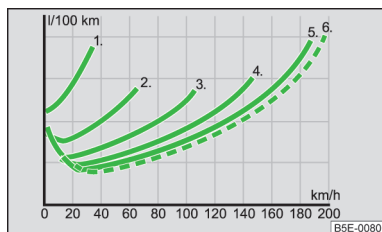


Fig. 125
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox

- Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
- Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2000 revolutions.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » [page 23](#).

A suitably selected gear can have an effect on fuel consumption » [Fig. 125](#).

Automatic gearbox

- **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the kickdown position.
- If the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly, an economic driving programme is automatically selected.

Avoiding full throttle

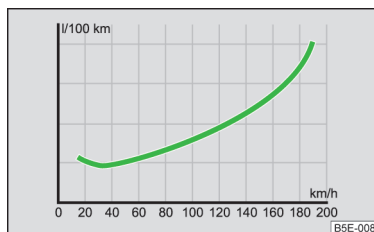


Fig. 126
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

The slower you drive, the more the fuel savings.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear of your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should, as far as possible, never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionately at high speeds.

The » [Fig. 126](#) shows the ratio of fuel consumption to the speed of your vehicle. Fuel consumption will be halved if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30-40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, whereby high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

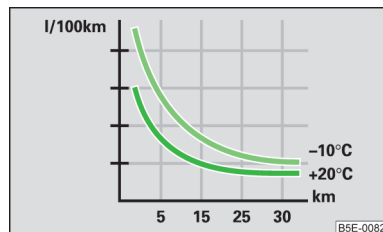


Fig. 127
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 127 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and a temperature of -10 °C.

The vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer.

Convenience consumers



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

The convenience consumers have a share in fuel consumption.

We recommend you keep these consumers on only for as long as necessary.

The convenience consumers include:

- The air conditioning system;
- Rear window heater;
- Windscreen heater;
- Heating of the external mirror;
- Rear fog light;
- Fog lights;
- Heated front seats;
- Auxiliary heating (parking heating).

Information about convenience consumers and the amount of fuel consumed » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

Up to three convenience consumers are displayed in the Infotainment display-the top 3 in terms of energy consumption.

Checking tyre inflation pressure



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyres must overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each **kilogramme of weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend to carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a ŠKODA specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for driving economically. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention.

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal!

Check the **oil** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5000 km.



For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a ŠKODA specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the floor.



Note

We recommend that your vehicle is serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA Partner.

Environmental compatibility



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 125.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, selection of materials, and manufacture of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures

- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO₂.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials

- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.
- No asbestos.
- Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture

- Solvent-free cavity protection.
- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- No CFCs used in the production process.
- Without use of mercury.
- Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always ¹⁾ be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations. ►

¹⁾ Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

i Note

Detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information	129
Driving through water on roads	129

General information



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 129.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

- When driving on poorly maintained roads and lanes.
- When driving over kerb stones.
- When driving on steep ramps, etc.

Particular attention is necessary for vehicle with a sport suspension and when then vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on roads

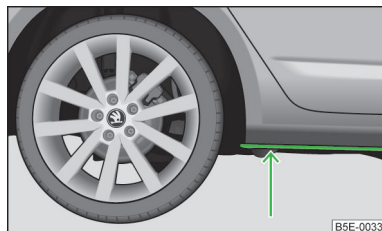


Fig. 128
Driving through water



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 129.

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

- Determine the depth of the water when driving through bodies of water.

The water level must fit around the strut on the side member as a maximum » Fig. 128.

- Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

- Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.
- Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 141.



WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can reduce the braking power and extend the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.



CAUTION

- When driving through bodies of water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through a body of water, we recommend that the vehicle is checked by a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unleaded petrol	130
Headlights	130

In certain countries it is also possible that the ŠKODA Partner network is limited or has not been established yet. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

ŠKODA in the Czech Republic and its importers are happy to provide information about technical aspects of the vehicle, required maintenance work and possibilities for getting repairs done.

Unleaded petrol



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » [page 192](#). Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 130.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, the headlights must be adjusted by a ŠKODA Partner.

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by setting the "tourist light" mode in Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (button CAR).

Note

Further information on adjusting the headlights is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	131
Antilock Braking System (ABS)	132
Traction Control System (TCS)	132
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)	133

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then be without function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety offered by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a ŠKODA specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS as you will not know how great the damage is and the limitation it is placing on the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » [page 188](#).

Note

If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL also do not work. An ABS fault is indicated with the warning light  » [page 15](#).

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



Fig. 129
ESC system: TCS button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

The ESC system helps to maintain control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. The risk of skidding is reduced and your car thus offers greater driving stability depending on the conditions of the road surface.

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If differences exist, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.

- Antilock Brake System (ABS).
- Traction Control System (TCS).
- Electronic Differential Lock (EDL).
- Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR).
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA).
- Hill hold control (HHC).
- "Multicollision brake"
- Trailer stabilisation (TSA) » [page 156](#), *Driving with a trailer*.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. In the Infotainment or with the button  » [Fig. 129](#) only the TCR can be deactivated » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the TCR is deactivated.

Active driver-steering recommendation (DSR)

The DSR indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

The HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill hold control (HHC)

HHC allows you, when driving on slopes, to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active as of a 5 % slope, if the driver door is closed. HHC is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

"Multicollision brake"

The multifunction brake deploys automatic braking after a collision in order to reduce the risk of further collisions. Automatic braking can only be deployed at speeds of over 10 km/h in the event of a **frontal** or **side** impact.

The vehicle is slowed down automatically by the ESC system as long as the brakes, the ESC and the relevant electrical system remain operational after the impact.

Automatic braking is not applied if the driver presses the accelerator during the accident.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)



Fig. 130
TCS button



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS system adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » [page 131](#).

During an intervention of the system, the TCS warning light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be switched on. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

The TCR can be deactivated in the Infotainment or with the button

 » Fig. 130 » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

The warning light  lights up in the instrument cluster when the TCR is deactivated.

Ensure the TCS is activated again afterwards.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 131.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches off automatically if severe stresses exist in order to avoid excessive heat generation in the disc brake on the wheel which is being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

Parking aid



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	134
Automatic system activation when moving forward	135
Road display	135



WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- You should satisfy yourself before reversing that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under unfavourable conditions, objects or people may not be recognised.



CAUTION

- If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is confirmed additionally when the symbol  flashes in the button .  or  appears in the Infotainment display. Have the fault rectified by a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the system to operate properly.



Note

- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- If not all fields around the vehicle are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or in reverse.
- If the system is activated and the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is in the position **P** (the vehicle cannot move), the warning signal is interrupted and no obstacles are displayed.
- Additional mounted modules, such as a bicycle carrier, can impair the function of the parking aid.

Function

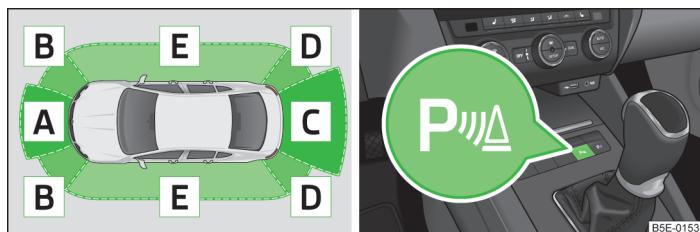


Fig. 131 Parking aid: Range of sensors/parking aid button on vehicles with front and rear sensors

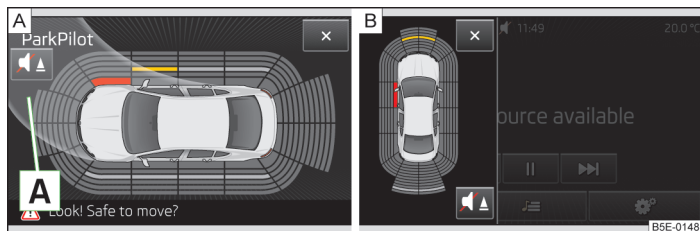


Fig. 132 road display/compact display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 133.

The parking aid (hereafter only referred to as system) works only when the ignition is switched on.

The system supports the driver using acoustic signals/Infotainment display when parking and manoeuvring.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors are integrated in the front/rear bumper.

Explanation of graphic - range of sensors in the vicinity of the vehicle

Area » Fig. 131	Range of sensors ^{a)}
	120 cm
	90 cm
	160 cm
	90 cm
	90 cm

^{a)} These are only the approximate ranges of sensors.

^{b)} Applies only for vehicles with 12 sensors.

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device. The danger area thus begins at a distance of around 35 cm on vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device.

For information on setting the acoustic signals and a description of the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (button CAR).

Activation/deactivation

The system is automatically activated when you shift into **reverse** or after pressing the button » Fig. 131. The symbol lights up in the button; activation is confirmed by a brief acoustic signal.

The system is deactivated by moving out of reverse gear, by pressing the button or automatically at a speed exceeding 10 km/h (the symbol in the button goes out).

On vehicles which **only have rear** sensors, the system can only be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

Towing a trailer

On vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device, only the areas and » Fig. 131 of the system are active when operating a trailer, there is no road display.

Automatic system activation when moving forward



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 133.

Automatic activation takes place at a speed below around 10 km/h under the following conditions.

- The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 90 cm.
- The distance to the obstacle at the front is less than around 30 cm.
- The distance to the obstacle to the side of the vehicle is less than around 30 cm.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 132 on page 134 - **B**.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

Automatic display can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Road display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 133.

The display of the upcoming road changes depending on the steering angle **A** » Fig. 132 on page 134 - **A**.

Obstacles that are **located** on the road are represented by the following colours.

- Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
- Yellow – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

Obstacles that are **not located** on the road are represented by the following colours.

- Red – the distance to the obstacle is less than about 30 cm.
- White – the distance to the obstacle is more than about 30 cm.

The road **ahead** is displayed when a forward gear or Neutral is engaged or the selector lever is in position **N**.

The road **behind the vehicle** is displayed when reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is in position **R**.

Park assist



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Finding a parking space	136
Parking	137
Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space	137
Automatic brake assist	138
Information messages	138

The parking aid is part of the park assist system, therefore the information and safety guidelines » page 133, *Parking aid* must be read and observed.

Park Assist (in the following referred to as the system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places and also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system only operates if the ignition is switched on.

During the parking procedure the system only takes over the steering movements, the pedals continue to be operated by the driver.

When the system is activated, **P** the warning light **P** » Fig. 133 on page 136 - **A** lights up in the button.

The traction control system (TCS) must always be switched on when parking.

Basis of the system function

- The measurement and evaluation of the size of parking spaces when driving.
- The determination of the correct position of the vehicle for parking.
- The calculation of the line on which the vehicle drives backwards into the parking space or forwards from the parking space.
- the automatic turning of the front wheels when parking in, or manoeuvring out of the parking space.

! WARNING

- The system does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on parking in and manoeuvring out of the parking space. Under unfavourable conditions, objects or people may not be recognised.
- When parking in, and manoeuvring out of parking spaces, the system automatically executes quick steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- If other vehicles are parked behind or on the kerb, the system guides your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces or structures of certain objects such as wire mesh fences, powder snow, etc., cannot be recognised by the system.
- The evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels. The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a SKODA specialist garage.
- Under certain circumstances, the system may not function correctly, for example, if the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.

Finding a parking space

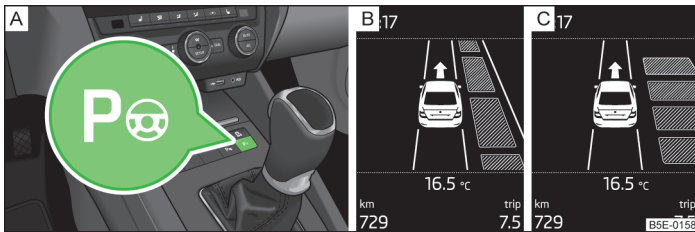


Fig. 133 System button/displays in the instrument cluster display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 135.

The search for a suitable parking space takes place while the display is switched off. If the display is not switched on using the button **Pe** until the driver drives past the parking space, the system can assess and display this parking space.

Finding a parallel parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 40 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
- Press the button **Pe** » Fig. 133 **once**.

The following is shown in the information display of the information cluster » Fig. 133 - **B**.

Finding a perpendicular parking space

- Drive past the parking space at up to 20 km/h and a distance of 0.5 – 1.5 m.
- Press the button **Pe** **twice** » Fig. 133.

The following is shown in the information display of the information cluster » Fig. 133 - **C**.

The search area for the parking space on the front passenger's side is automatically shown in the instrument cluster display.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to park on this side of the road. The search area for the parking space on the driver's side is shown in the instrument cluster display.

If suitable parking space is found, its parameters are stored until another suitable parking space has been found or until a distance of 10 m had been driven after finding the parking space.

If the driver changes the parking mode while searching for a parking space, the button **Pe** must be pressed again.

Parking

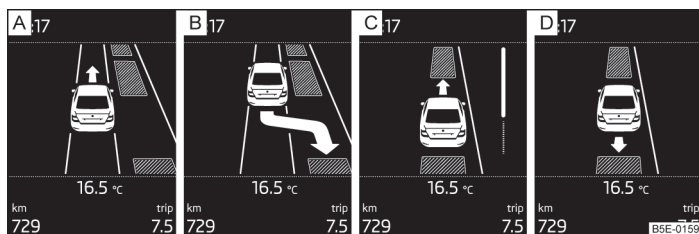


Fig. 134 Displays in the instrument cluster display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 135.

The time limit for the parking procedure with the help of the system is 6 minutes. If the system has recognised a suitable parking space, this parking space is shown in the display » Fig. 134 - A.

- Continue driving forwards until the display » Fig. 134 - B appears in the display.
- Stop the vehicle for at least 1 second.
- Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever into the position R.
- As soon as the following message is shown in the information cluster display: **Steering int. active. Check around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel and the steering is taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

In the event that the parking procedure cannot be carried out in one go, the parking process is completed in further stages.

- If the arrow in the display is flashing to the front » Fig. 134 C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever into the position D.
- Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully drive forwards.
- When the arrow in the display is flashing towards the rear » Fig. 134 - D, engage the reverse gear or move the selector lever to the position R.
- Wait until the steering wheel automatically turns into the required position and then carefully reverse.

You can repeat these steps several times.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Steering interven. stopped. Take over steering!

Explanation of graphic

-  A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
-  B Parking place recognised with the information to engage the reverse gear.
-  C Indication for selecting the forward gear.
-  D Indication for selecting the reverse gear.

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvre if any of the following events occurs, and a message will appear in the display.

- Speed of 7 km/h repeatedly exceeded during the parking procedure.
- Time limit of 6 minutes exceeded for the parking procedure.
- System button pressed.
- TCS system switched off.
- Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
- Reverse gear disengaged or selector lever removed from the position R when reversing into the parking space.
- Selector lever moved to position P.
- There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 138.

Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 135.

Manoeuvring out

- Press the button  » Fig. 133 on page 136 **once**.
- Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
- Engage reverse gear.
- As soon as the following is shown in the information cluster display: **Steering int. active. Check around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel and the steering is taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

- Follow the instructions of the system shown in the instrument cluster display.

As soon as the manoeuvring procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

ⓘ Steering interven. stopped. Take over steering!

Automatic termination

The system terminates the manoeuvring procedure if one of the following cases arises.

- Speed of 7 km/h exceeded during the manoeuvring procedure.
- System button pressed.
- TCS system switched off.
- Intervention of the driver in the automatic steering procedure (stops the steering wheel).
- There is a system fault (system temporarily not available).

If any of the above events occurs, the following warning message is displayed. » page 138.

Automatic brake assist



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⓘ on page 135.

The system provides assistance to the driver with automatic brake assist. The automatic brake assist does not exempt the driver from his/her responsibility for the accelerator, brake and clutch.

Automatic braking for preventing cancellations caused by excessive speeds

To prevent the speed from exceeding 7 km/h and to subsequently prevent cancellation of the parking procedure, automatic brake support is initiated. The parking procedure can be resumed after automatic braking.

Automatic braking takes place only once per parking procedure.

Automatic braking for damage limitation

The system detects an imminent collision based on the driving speed and the distance from the obstacle, automatic brake support is initiated.

The system function is ended after this automatic brake assist for damage limitation.



WARNING

- Automatic brake assist only works as an element of the assist function. The driver must always be ready to brake the vehicle him/herself.
- Automatic brake assist is ended after around 1.5 seconds. Depress the braking pedal so that the vehicle does not start moving by itself.

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⓘ on page 135.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

ⓘ Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.

The speed under 40 km/h (parallel parking) / 20 km/h (perpendicular parking). This message is only displayed at speeds up to around 50 km/h. When the speed exceeds 50 km/h, activate the system again with the button **[Pw]**.

ⓘ Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.

The speed under 40 km/h (parallel parking) / 20 km/h (perpendicular parking). This message is only displayed at speeds up to around 50 km/h. When the speed exceeds 50 km/h, activate the system again with the button **[Pw]**.

ⓘ Speed too high. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the speed was exceeded. Park with a max. speed of 7 km/h.

ⓘ Park Assist stopped. Driver steer. intervent.

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

ⓘ Park Assist stopped. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated. Activate the TCS.

ⓘ ASR deactivated. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

ⓘ Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because a trailer is hitched.

❗ Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

❗ Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

❗ Park Assist stopped. currently not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

❗ Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

❗ Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!

Assume control of the steering. Complete the parking procedure without using the system.

❗ ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

❗ Park Assist: indicate and engage reverse!

The prerequisites for manoeuvring out of a parking space using the system have been met. Switch on the turn signals and shift into reverse.

❗ Please take over steering and drive on.

The manoeuvring procedure out of a parallel parking space has ended. Assume control of the steering.

❗ Aut. parking space exit not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

❗ Braking intervention. Speed too high.

The driving speed during the parking procedure was too high - automatic brake assist is initiated.

Cruise control system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating	140
Storing and maintaining speed	140
Changing the stored speed	140
Switching off temporarily	140
Information on the display	141

The cruise control system (CCS) maintains a constant speed, more than 30 km/h, once it has been set, without you having to depress the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

! WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent unintentional switching on of the system.

! CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. Therefore, shift to a lower gear in good time or slow the vehicle down by applying the foot brake.
- It is not possible to switch on the cruise control system on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox if the first gear or reverse gear is engaged.
- It is not possible on vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox to switch on the cruise control system if the selector lever is in the position **P**, **N** or **R**.

- The Cruise Control System may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the speed exceeds maximum permissible engine speed, or a similar event takes place.
- The Cruise Control System also remains activated after shifting the gear!

Activating/deactivating

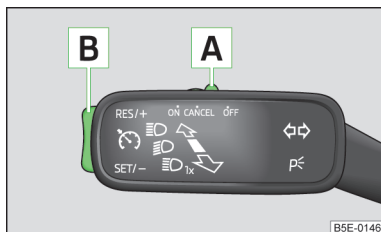


Fig. 135
Operating lever: Rocker switch and switch of the cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 139.

Activating

- Turn the switch » Fig. 135 into the **ON** position.

Deactivating

- Turn the switch » Fig. 135 into the **OFF** position.

Storing and maintaining speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 139.

- Activate the cruise control system » page 140.
- Drive at the desired speed.
- Press the rocker button in position **SET** » Fig. 135 on page 140.

After you have released the rocker button out of the position **SET**, the speed you have just stored is maintained at a constant speed without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing the stored speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 139.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button

- Press the rocker button in position **RES** » Fig. 135 on page 140.

The speed will increase continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **RES** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed with the rocker button

The stored speed can be **reduced** by pressing the rocker button » Fig. 135 on page 140 into the position **SET**.

The speed will decrease continuously, if the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET** position. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than 30 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. The speed must then be stored again by pressing the rocker button in the position **SET** after increasing the speed of the vehicle to more than 30 km/h.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator

- Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Decreasing the speed with the brake pedal

The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system » page 140.

Switching off temporarily

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 139.

The cruise control system is **temporarily switched off** by pressing the switch » Fig. 135 on page 140 into the spring-tensioned position **CANCEL** or by depressing the brake pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly press the rocker button **B** in position **RES** to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

Information on the display

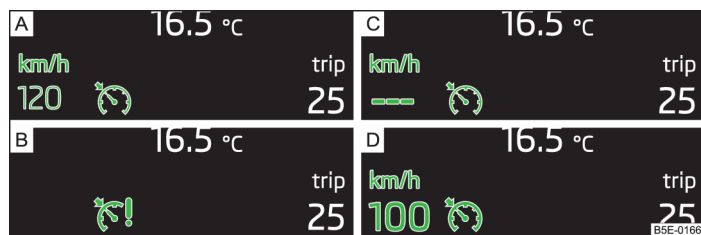


Fig. 136 Instrument cluster display: Examples of status displays the CCS

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 139.

Explanation of graphic

- A** The GRA is temporarily switched off.
- B** System fault. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- C** The speed memory is blank.
- D** The GRA is switched on.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Starting/shutting down the engine	142
Operating conditions of the system	142
Manually activating/deactivating the system	143
Information messages	143

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and CO₂ emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.
- ✓ No trailer is coupled.

WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » [page 129](#).

Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode on vehicles with manual transmission or on vehicles with automatic transmission when the selector lever in position **P**, the engine must be started manually » [page 115](#).
- After manually starting the engine on vehicles with manual transmission, automatic engine shut down is not possible until the vehicle has travelled the required minimum distance for START-STOP mode.
- If on vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever **D/S** or **N** is selected after moving in reverse, the vehicle will first need to achieve a speed greater than 10 km/h before automatic engine shut down takes place again.

- Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the Climatronic is running in automatic mode, under certain conditions, the engine may not switch off automatically.

Starting/shutting down the engine

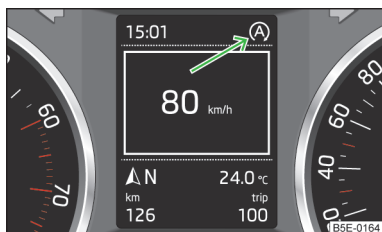


Fig. 137
Instrument cluster display: Engine shut down (STOP phase)



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 141.

Vehicles with manual transmission

- Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
- Put the gear stick into Neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shut down (STOP phase) takes place. The warning icon (A) » Fig. 137 appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

- Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again (START phase). The warning icon goes out.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shut down takes place. The warning icon (A) » Fig. 137 appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

- Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again. The warning icon goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission

Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D/S**, **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P** the engine remains shut down after you release the brake pedal. Start the engine by pressing the gas pedal or by choosing a different gear and releasing the brake pedal.

If the selector lever is moved into position **R** during the **STOP phase**, the engine will re-start.

There is no automatic engine shutdown if the system detects a vehicle movement due to a large steering angle, or when the selector lever is moved to position **R** (e.g. when parking).

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

Operating conditions of the system

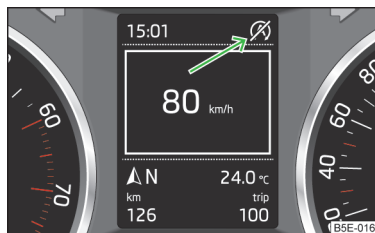


Fig. 138
Instrument cluster display: Engine shut down is not currently available



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 141.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing.

No engine shut down is carried out

Before each STOP phase, the system checks whether certain conditions have been met. No engine shut down takes place in the following situations.

- The engine has not reached the minimum temperature for START STOP mode.
- The temperature inside the vehicle has not reached the desired temperature set in the air-conditioning system/heating.
- The external temperature is very low/high.
- The windscreen heater is switched on.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The parking aid/Park Assist is switched on.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The stationary vehicle is on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
- The idling speed is too high.

The warning icon  » Fig. 138 appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

The automatic start procedure takes place again

During the STOP phase, the engine fires up without any active driver intervention, e.g. in the following situations.

- The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- The difference between the temperature setting of the air-conditioning system/heating and the temperature of the interior is too large.
- The windscreen heater is switched on.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The brake pedal was pressed several times (the pressure in the braking system is too low).
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.

Manually activating/deactivating the system



Fig. 139
Button for the START-STOP system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 141.

Activation/deactivation

➤ Press the button  » Fig. 139.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.



Note

- If the system is deactivated during the STOP phase, the automatic start procedure takes place.
- Selecting the driving mode **Eco** when the system is deactivated will automatically activate the system » page 143.

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 141.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

i Start the engine manually!

S START MANUALLY

The driver sees this message when the conditions for the automatic start procedure are not met during the STOP phase. The engine must be started manually » page 115.

i Error: start-stop system

S START STOP ERROR

Error in the START-STOP system. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Driving mode



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Selecting driving mode	144
Mode Normal	144
Mode Sport	144 ►

Mode Eco	145
Mode Individual	145

Selecting the driving mode allows you to adjust a range of different driving parameters for the vehicle.

The most recently selected driving mode (before the ignition was switched off) is mapped to the vehicle key and is re-activated after the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

- Setting the driving mode while driving can distract you from other traffic – risk of accident.
- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

i Note

The driver can change some vehicle functions irrespective of the selected driving mode. For instance, in the driving mode **Eco**, the driver can switch the automatic transmission to the mode **S**.

Selecting driving mode



Fig. 140
Centre console: Button for selecting the driving mode



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 143.

The menu for selecting the driving mode allows you to set the vehicle to one of the three preset driving modes **Normal**, **Sport** and **Eco**, or to the driving mode **Individual** which allows individual settings.

The selected driving mode is called by pressing the button  » Fig. 140 accessed, and the menu is opened in the Infotainment display. More information about setting the driving mode » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Other functions*.

If another than the driving mode **Normal** is selected, the icon  is lit in the button » Fig. 140.

Mode Normal



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 143.

The relevant systems are set for a general type of vehicle use.

This mode is suitable for common everyday use.

Mode Sport



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 143.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving style.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)

The accelerator pedal is more responsive to depressing the pedal, and the acceleration is more dynamic than in mode **Normal**.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **S** » page 120.

Steering

The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering » page 113.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

The headlights adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode **Normal** » page 50.

Proactive passenger protection

The first level of protection is deactivated » page 145.

Mode Eco



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 143.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine (drive)

The accelerator pedal is less responsive to depressing the pedal, and the acceleration is more relaxed than in mode **Normal**.

After pressing the button, the acceleration occurs more relaxed than in mode **Normal** » page 139, *Cruise control system*.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 23.

When the START-STOP system was deactivated manually » page 141, it is automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 120.

Adaptive headlights (AHL)

The system is automatically deactivated » page 50.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)

The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode **Normal**.



Note

- The **Eco** driving mode is not available when towing a trailer. When the vehicle is connected electrically to a trailer and is in the **Eco** driving mode, the **Normal** driving mode is configured automatically.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kickdown function) is possible also in driving mode **Eco**.

Mode Individual



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 143.

In mode **Individual** you can select between **Normal**, **Sport** and **Eco** for each system separately » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Other Functions*.

ProActive passenger protection



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	145
Information messages	146



WARNING

Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety by ProActive passenger protection must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise – risk of accident!



Note

If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated » page 172 the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

Function



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 145.

ProActive passenger protection (hereinafter referred to only as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

The system is ready to intervene automatically in the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The vehicle moves at a speed of more than 30 km/h.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- The windows in the side doors (if open) are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first level of protection can be deactivated by one of the following measures.

- Deactivation of the system in Infotainment» *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (button CAR)*.
- Deactivation of TCS » [page 132](#).
- Selecting the driving mode **Sport**» [page 143](#).

The second level of protection

The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as in panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 145.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

-  **ProActive passenger protection not available.**
-  **ProActive passenger protection: funct. restricted.**

Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Lane Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	147
Explanations of situations	148
Information messages	148

WARNING

- Lane Assist only operates as a support - it does absolve the driver of the responsibility to maintain full control over the vehicle's steering.
- Lane Assist only makes the driver aware that the vehicle is approaching the line between two lanes by means of a steering intervention. The driver retains responsibility at all times for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- The camera need not be able to detect all lane lines. A steering intervention can only be made when the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes.
- Some objects on the road may be incorrectly detected as lines. As a result, an incorrect steering intervention may take place.
- The function of adaptive lane guidance Assist system may be restricted when driving e.g. over rutted roads, on a slope, or if there are lateral winds.
- Do not use the assist system in poor weather, e.g. black ice, fog, heavy rain - risk of accident!

WARNING

The camera's powers of detection may be limited by a range of external influences. In this case, the Assist system may not be able to detect the line correctly, if at all. The camera's powers of detection may be limited, e.g. in the following:

- in poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall;
- when dazzled by the sun;
- when dazzled by oncoming traffic;
- by vehicles ahead;
- when the camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

! CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the Assist system.

Function

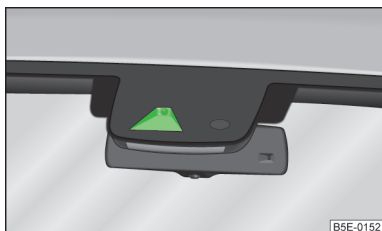


Fig. 141
Windscreen: Camera viewing
window for Lane Assist



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 146.

Lane Assist (in the following referred to as the system) detects the lines between lanes using data obtained from the camera (continuous and interrupted) » Fig. 141.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be overridden at any time.

The strength of the steering movement can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

Where necessary, the system only performs a steering intervention when the boundary line is detected on at least one side of the lane.

If the turn signal is switched on prior to driving over the boundary line (e.g. when making a turn), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

The system works above speeds of 65 km/h and is designed for driving on motorways and streets with high-quality markings (the boundary lines must have high visibility).

Adaptive lane assist

The system helps to keep the selected position between the boundary lines by steering interventions. A steering intervention is only made when the boundary lines are detected on both sides of the vehicle.

If the position within the lane is changed, the system quickly adapts and holds the newly-selected position.

Adaptive lane assist can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems* (CAR button).

Explanations of situations

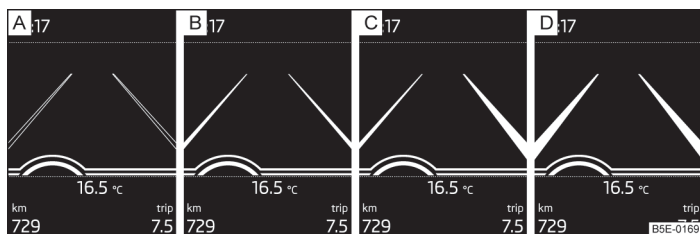


Fig. 142 Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications

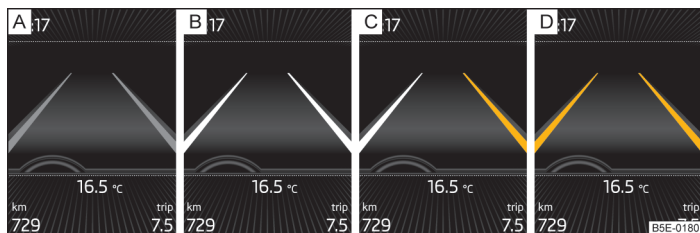


Fig. 143 Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 146.

Explanation of graphic

- A** The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
- B** The system is active and ready to intervene.
- C** The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
- D** The system intervenes (adaptive lane assist).

The system can be activated/deactivated in the following menu in the display of the instrument cluster:

- Assist systems
 - Lane Assist

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

Illuminates	Description
	The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
	The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

The indicator light is lit. Possible causes.

- The vehicle is travelling at less than 65 km/h.
- No lane boundary exists.
- The lane boundary was not detected.
- The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.
- The lane is less than 2.5 m in width.
- The radius of the curve is too small.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 146.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Assist not available. No sensor view.

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Lane Assist currently not available.

The system has limited functionality due to a temporary error. Try to re-activate the machine.

Error: Lane Assist

A system error is present. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Lane Assist: take over steering!

The system has detected that there are no hands on the steering wheel. In this case, the Assist system is not ready to intervene. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	150
Information messages	150

The detected traffic signs appear in the instrument cluster display in the following menu:

- **Driving data**
 - **Traffic sign**

Additional display

If the menu item is not currently displayed with traffic sign detection, the traffic sign is displayed with the speed limit in the upper area of the instrument cluster display » [Fig. 145](#) on page 150 - [B](#).

The additional display traffic sign detection can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

Traffic sign display when towing a trailer

When towing a trailer, displaying the traffic signs which apply when towing a trailer can be activated.

The traffic sign detection display when towing a trailer can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

WARNING

- Traffic sign detection only operates as a support. Real traffic signs always have priority over electronic displays. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Traffic signs may not be recognised at all by the system, or may be recognised incorrectly. As a result, the traffic signs may not be displayed at all, or the wrong one may appear.
- Traffic sign recognition does not warn about exceeding the maximum permitted speed nor does it adjust the driving speed to the maximum speed!
- The display is based on standard national speed units. The display  in the instrument cluster display can therefore be in km/h or mph depending on the country concerned.

Note

Traffic sign recognition is not available in all countries.

Function

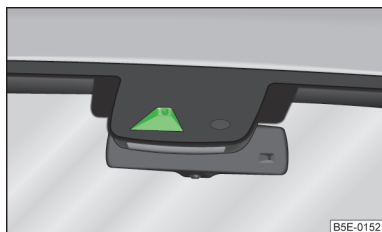


Fig. 144
Windscreen: Camera viewing range for traffic sign recognition

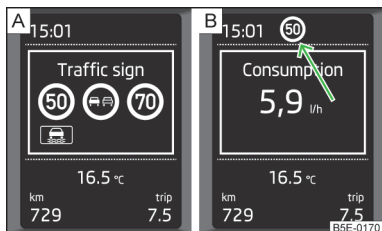


Fig. 145
Instrument cluster display: Example of traffic sign recognition display/additional display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 149.

Traffic sign recognition (hereinafter referred to only as system) allows traffic signs with maximum speeds/no overtaking recognised by the system to be shown in the instrument cluster display.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system works on the basis of the data captured by the camera and is only able to show traffic signs which are in the camera's viewing range » Fig. 144.

Data from the camera can be supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in the following situations.

- Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are fully or partially obscured (e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border).
- The traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 149.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

No traffic signs detected.

No maximum speeds were recognised (e.g. on German motorways where there is no speed limit).

Error: traffic sign recognition

A system error is present. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition: clean windscreen!

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Traffic sign recognition: restricted.

Infotainment Navigation is not currently providing any data. Check whether the maps are up-to-date or the whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Fatigue detection (break recommendation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	151
Information messages	151 ■

Function



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 151.

The fatigue detection system advises the driver on the basis of information about the steering behaviour, to take a break from driving. The system recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

After the ignition has been switched on, the system evaluates the steering behaviour for 15 minutes. This baseline analysis is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour.

If the system detects deviations from normal steering behaviour due to possible fatigue of the driver, it recommends to take a break from driving.

The system deletes the stored baseline analysis if one of the following conditions is met.

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition is turned off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt is taken off and the driver's door is opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions is met or the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

WARNING

- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, in adverse weather conditions, or in bad road conditions).
- The fatigue detection system is designed primarily for motorway driving. ■

Information messages



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 151.

The symbol  will and the following message appear in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds.

-  **Driver alert. Take a break.**
-  **DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK**

An audible signal is also emitted. ■

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description	152
Setting the ready position	153
Installing the ball rod	153
Checking proper fixing	154
Removing the ball rod	154
Operation and maintenance	155

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal provisions for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **75 kg/h**.

! WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the ball rod if it is not correctly inserted in the mounting recess.
- Do not operate the towing device if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Never release the ball rod while the trailer is still coupled.

! CAUTION

- If there is an error in the trailer lighting system, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dashboard » [page 232](#).
- Handle the ball rod carefully to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

i Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they work.
- If you have any questions, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

Description

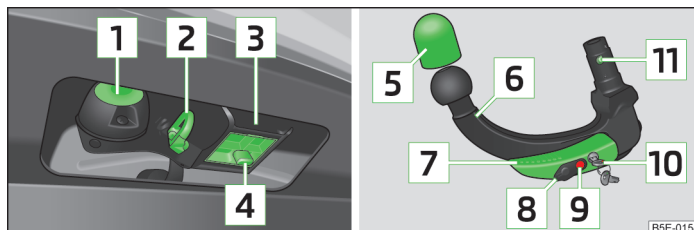


Fig. 146 Carrier of the towing device/ball rod

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 152.

The ball rod can be removed and can be found in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » [page 215](#).

Explanation of graphic

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| | 13-pin power socket |
| | Safety eye |
| | Mounting recess |
| | Cap |
| | Dust cap |
| | Ball rod |
| | Operating lever |
| | Lock cap |
| | Trigger pin |
| | Keys |
| | Locking ball |

i Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Setting the ready position

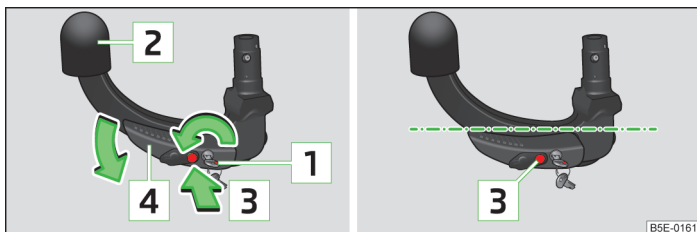


Fig. 147 Setting the ready position/ready position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 152.

Before installing always adjust the ball rod in the ready position.

- Turn the key so that its red mark » Fig. 147 becomes visible.
- Grab the ball rod underneath the protective cap .
- Press the trigger pin as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The lever remains locked in this position.

! CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned into a different position.

Installing the ball rod

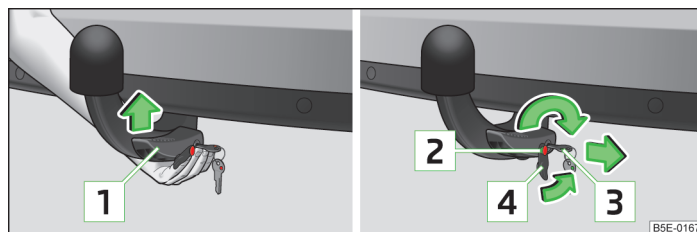


Fig. 148 Insert the ball rod/lock up the lock, and put the lock cover on

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 152.

- Pull of the cap » Fig. 146 on page 152 downwards.
- Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 153.
- Grab the ball rod **from underneath** » Fig. 148 and insert into the mounting recess until it audibly clicks » .

The lever » Fig. 148 **automatically** turns upwards and the trigger pin comes out (its red and green part is visible) » .

If the lever does not turn automatically, or if the trigger pin does not come out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning the lever downwards as far as it can go. Clean the wedge surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

- Lock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key by 180° to the right (see green marking is visible) and remove the key in the direction of the arrow.
- Push the cap » Fig. 148 onto the lock in the direction of the arrow » .
- Check the ball rod for proper attachment » page 154.

! WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

! CAUTION

- After removing the key, **always** replace the cap on the lock of the operating lever – the lock may get contaminated.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!
- After removing the ball rod, always place the cap on the mounting recess.

Checking proper fixing

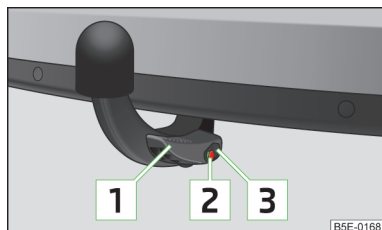


Fig. 149
Check the proper attachment of the ball rod



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 152.

Before each use of the ball rod, check that it is attached properly.

Check the following points.

- ✓ The lever [1] is at the top » Fig. 149.
- ✓ The trigger pin [2] is completely exposed (both its red and green part is visible).
- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ the cap [3] is on top of the lock of the operating lever.
- ✓ The ball rod does not come off the mounting recess even after strong "shaking".

! WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the ball rod was properly locked!

Removing the ball rod

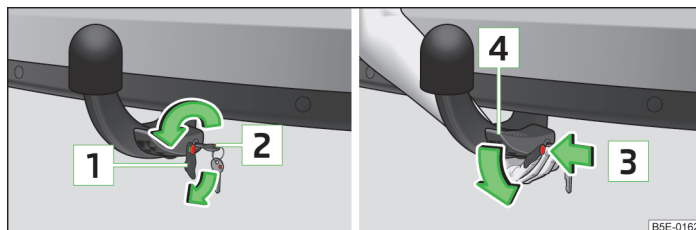


Fig. 150 Unlock the operating lever of the ball rod/removing the ball rod



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 152.

- Remove the cap [1] » Fig. 150 from the lock on the ball rod in the direction of the arrow.
- Unlock the lock on the operating lever by turning the key 180° to the left so that the red marking [2] becomes visible.
- Grab hold of the ball rod from underneath.
- Press the trigger pin [3] as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow - at the same time push the lever [4] downwards as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow.

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

- Place the cap [4] » Fig. 146 on page 152 on the mounting recess.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage in a sudden braking manoeuvre and put the safety of the occupants at risk!

! CAUTION

- If the lever is held firm and not pushed downwards as far as it can go, it will go back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball rod then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed.
- Stow the ball rod in the ready position with the key inserted in the box. When doing so, make the side opposite to the inserted key face downwards – risk of damaging the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

i Note

Remove any dirt from the ball rod before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Operation and maintenance



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 152.

Seal the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Use a suitable lubricating grease where necessary.

Include the protective cap when stowing away the ball rod to protect the boot from getting contaminated.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

! CAUTION

Apply lubricating grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Loading a trailer	155
Driving with a trailer	156
Trailer stabilisation	157
Anti-theft alarm system	157

! WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 155.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load

Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive at a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 208, *Life of tyres*.

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 241, *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (every one begun), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight comprises the actual weight of the (loaded) towing vehicle and the (loaded) trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device are merely test data for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

! WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – risk of accident and serious injuries!
- Slipping loads can significantly affect the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – risk of accident and serious injuries!

Driving with a trailer

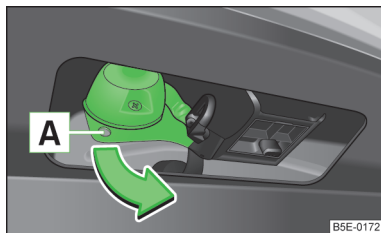


Fig. 151
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 155.

- Before hitching the trailer to the vehicle, hold on to the 13-pin power socket in the area **A** » Fig. 151 and swivel it out in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the protective cap **5** » Fig. 146 on page 152 upwards before hitching the trailer to the vehicle.

Safety eye

The purpose of the safety eye **2** » Fig. 146 on page 152 is to attach the break-away cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eye, it must **sag freely** in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse, etc.).

Exterior mirrors

You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The headlight settings must be checked before starting a journey with a coupled trailer. If necessary, adjust the settings with the headlight beam adjustment » page 48.

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when hitching a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating

If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light  in the display is lit. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 200.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 19,  *Coolant*.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

! WARNING

- Never use the safety eye to tow a vehicle!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

WARNING (Continued)

- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- All work on the electrical system must be carried out only by ŠKODA specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

Note

- Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eye can result in mechanical wear on the protective surface of the eye. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eye and is not a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
- If you tow a trailer frequently, have your car inspected between service intervals too.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be put on when coupling and decoupling the trailer.

Trailer stabilisation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 155.

The trailer stabilisation is an extension of the stabilisation control that works in conjunction with the counter-steering assistance to reduce the amount the trailer "sways".

After turning on the ignition, the ESC warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up for about 2 seconds longer than the ABS warning light.

Prerequisites for stabilising the trailer.

- ✓ The towing device is assembled or retrofitted ex works.
- ✓ The ESC system is active. The warning light  or  in the instrument cluster is **not illuminated**.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.

- ✓ The trailer has a rigid drawbar.
- ✓ The ESC system works for both braked and unbraked trailers.



WARNING

The increased safety offered by the trailer stabilisation must not tempt you to take greater risks than otherwise.



CAUTION

- The trailer stabilisation need not be able to correctly detect all of driving situations.
- Trailers that sway slightly are not always detected by the trailer stabilisation and thus are not stabilised accordingly.
- Release the pressure on the accelerator pedal if the system is being regulated.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.

Anti-theft alarm system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 155.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is connected/disconnected » [page 35](#), *Anti-theft alarm system*.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.



Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Safety equipment	158
Before setting off	158
What influences the driving safety?	159

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

It is therefore important, in particular, to comply with the notes and warnings in this section for your own interest and in the interest of those travelling with you.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Safety equipment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 158.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- Seat belt height adjusters for front seats.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- Driver's knee airbag.
- Front side airbags.
- Rear side airbags.
- Head airbags.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
- Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
- Head restraints adjustable for height.
- Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries during an accident caused by the deployed airbag.

Before setting off



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 158.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Secure all items of luggage » [page 79, Luggage compartment](#).
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Adjust the mirrors, the front seat and head restraint to your body size.

- Advise your passengers to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
- Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » [page 177, Transporting children safely.](#)
- Adopt the correct seated position » [page 159, Proper seated position.](#) Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » [page 162, Using seat belts.](#)

What influences the driving safety?



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 158](#).

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Do not get distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. through medication, alcohol or drugs.
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Proper seated position



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Proper seated position of the driver	160
Proper seated position of the front passenger	160
Proper seated position of the passengers in the rear seats	160
Examples of incorrect seated positions	161



WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper seated position.

- At all times, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the person's body size and the seat belt must be attached properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to passengers.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be angled too far back when driving otherwise this will affect proper operation of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!



WARNING

As the **driver**, observe the following instructions.

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

! WARNING

As the **front passenger**, observe the following instructions.

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Proper seated position of the driver

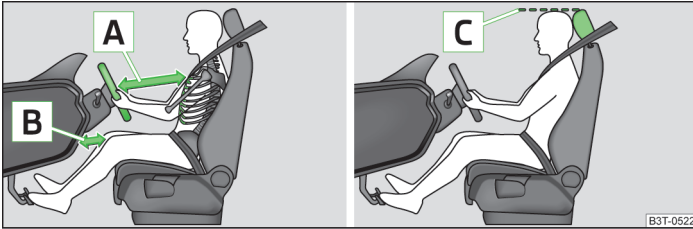


Fig. 152 Correct seated position for the driver/correct head restraint position

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 159.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Position the steering wheel so that there is a gap of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the chest **[A]** » Fig. 152, and that the distance between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag is at least 10 cm **[B]**.
- Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head **[C]**.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 162, *Using seat belts*.

Manual driver seat adjustment » page 64.

Electrical driver seat adjustment » page 64.

Proper seated position of the front passenger

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 159.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.

- Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head **[C]** » Fig. 152 on page 160.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 162.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 172, *Deactivating airbags*.

Manual front passenger adjustment » page 64.

Electrical front passenger seat adjustment » page 64.

Proper seated position of the passengers in the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 159.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head **[C]** » Fig. 152 on page 160.
- Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 162, *Using seat belts*.
- Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 177, *Transporting children safely*.

Examples of incorrect seated positions



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 159.

The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if your seat-belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- Do not stand up.
 - Do not stand on the seats.
 - Do not knee on the seats.
 - Do not tilt the seat backrest too much to the back.
 - Do not lean against the dash panel.
 - Do not lie on the rear seat bench.
 - Do not sit only on the front area of the seat.
 - Do not sit facing to the side.
 - Do not lean out of the window.
 - Do not put your feet out of the window.
 - Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
 - Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.
 - Do not transport somebody in the footwell.
 - Do not drive without fastening the seat belt.
 - Do not remain in the luggage compartment.
- 

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction



Fig. 153
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision	163
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	164
Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats	165

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 153.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

The occupants of a vehicle who have fastened and correctly adjusted their seat belt profit to a major extent from the fact that the kinetic energy is as much as possible absorbed by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the kinetic energy in the best possible way. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 177.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the people seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 164, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 159, *Proper seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions to ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed.

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts properly.

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.

- Never use a seatbelt to secure two persons (not children either). The seat-belt must not be placed over a child who is sat on the lap of an occupant either.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » [page 69](#).

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper use of the seat belts.

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » [page 188, Seat belts](#).
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced - this is best done by a ŠKODA specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

i Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

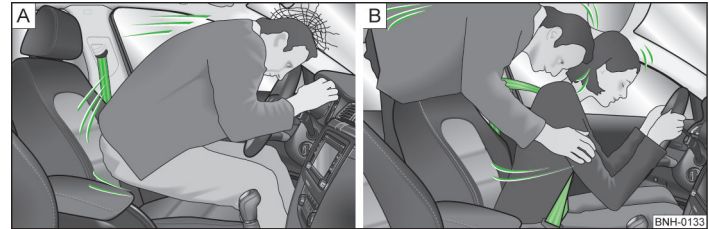


Fig. 154 Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 162.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The opinion that it is possible to support your body in a minor accident with your hands, is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt, are thrown forward and strike in an uncontrolled way parts of the interior of the car, such as steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » [Fig. 154 - A](#). In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear seat occupants fasten their seat belts as they will otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

A rear seat passenger who has not fastened the seat belt is a danger not only to himself but also for those seated at the front » Fig. 154 - [B].

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

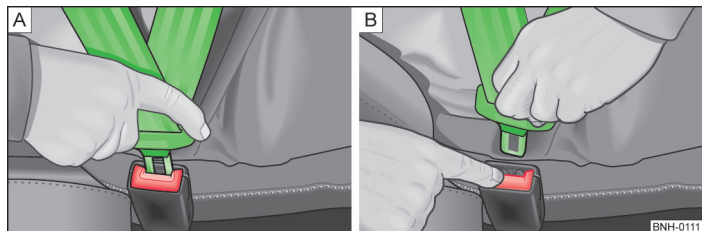


Fig. 155 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

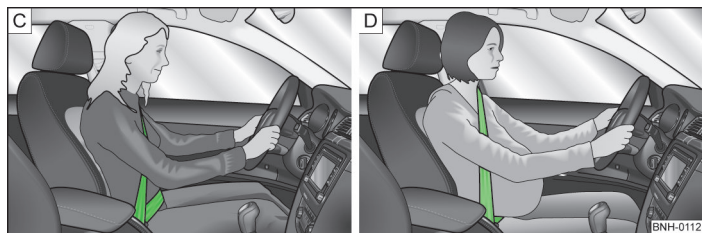


Fig. 156 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings [A] on page 162.

Fasten

- » Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint before fastening the seat belt » page 159.

- » Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
- » Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle » Fig. 155 - [A] that is part of the seat until it clicks into place.
- » Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

- A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt webbing is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 156 - [C].

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

On expectant mothers, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 156 - [D].

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

- » Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 155 - [B], the lock tongue pops out.
- » Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.



CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Seat belt height adjuster on the front seats

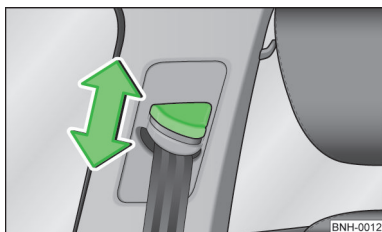


Fig. 157
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 162.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

- Press the height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 157.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel	165
Belt tensioners	165

Intertia reel



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 165.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also block when during full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.



WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Belt tensioners



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 165.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.



WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA Partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information. ■

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description _____ 167

Airbag deployment _____ 167

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection only in combination with a seat belt which is fastened.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » [page 159](#), *Proper seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.

- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a ŠKODA specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 167.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light  in the instrument cluster » [page 16](#).

When the airbags are deployed they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system consists – depending on the vehicle equipment – of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » [page 169](#).
- Driver's knee airbag » [page 170](#).
- Side airbags » [page 170](#).
- Head airbags » [page 171](#).
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » [page 16](#).
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » [page 173](#).
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag/activation in dash panel centre » [page 173](#).



Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 167.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer that additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:

- the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
- the hazard warning light is switched on;
- all the doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags	169
Driver's knee airbag	170
Side airbags	170
Head airbags	171 ■

Front airbags

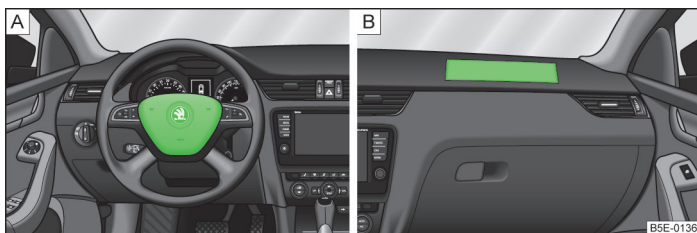


Fig. 158 Driver airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel

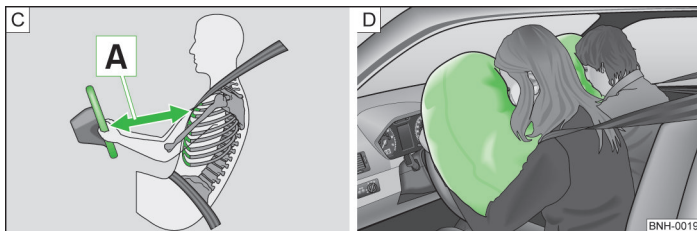


Fig. 159 Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is housed in the steering wheel » Fig. 158 – A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the stowage compartment » Fig. 158 – B.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 159 – B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

! WARNING

Correct seated position

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 159. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

! WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- It is essential to always switch off the front passenger airbag when attaching a child safety seat to the front passenger seat where the child is seated with its back facing in direction of travel » page 172, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

! WARNING

General

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Driver's knee airbag

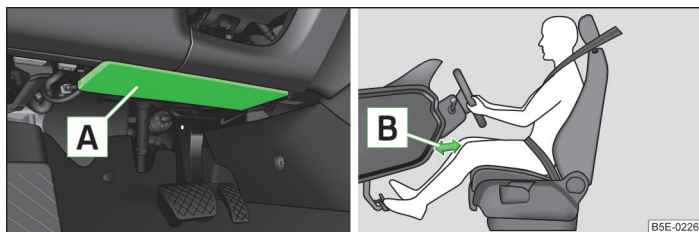


Fig. 160 Driver's knee airbag below the steering column



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag **A** is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 160.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the driver's knee airbag and front airbags are deployed.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

! WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs **B** and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 160. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects must be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

Side airbags

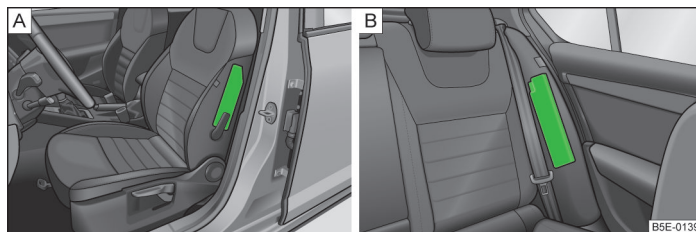


Fig. 161 Installation location of the side airbags front/rear

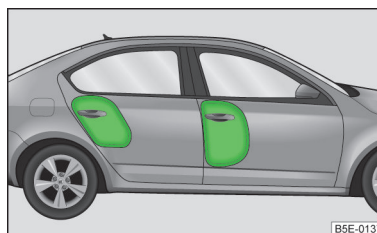


Fig. 162
Inflated side airbags



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 161 - **A**.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 161-**B**.

When the side airbags » Fig. 162 are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side. ►

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper seated position.

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » [page 179](#), *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » [page 177](#), *Child seat*.

! WARNING

The airbag control unit operates with pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason no adjustments must be carried out to the doors and door panels (e.g. additional installation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative effect on the operation of the airbag system. All work on the front doors and their panels must only be carried out by a ŠKODA specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with removed inner door panels.
- Never drive, if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the remaining openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive, if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, only if the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled, if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts are installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work completed by a ŠKODA Partner or a competent ŠKODA specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired without delay by your ŠKODA specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

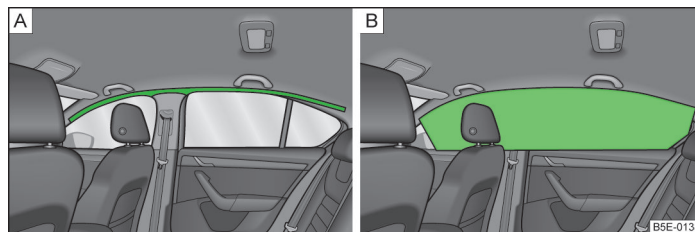


Fig. 163 Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 168.

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides in the interior of the car » [Fig. 163 - A](#).

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the windows of the front and rear doors, as well as the door pillar » [Fig. 163](#) – [B](#).

Any impact of the head against parts of the interior or objects outside of the car, is cushioned by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

The head airbag also offers additional protection in the case of an offset impact by covering the front door pillar.

! WARNING

General

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the fitted accessories could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » [page 188](#).
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must no other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the passenger and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

! WARNING

The airbag control unit operates with pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason no adjustments must be carried out to the doors and door panels (e.g. additional installation of loudspeakers). Resulting damages can have a negative affect on the operation of the airbag system. All work on the front doors and their panels must only be carried out by a ŠKODA specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with removed inner door panels.
- Never drive, if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the remaining openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive, if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, only if the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled, if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts are installed in the inner door panels.
- Always have work completed by a ŠKODA Partner or a competent ŠKODA specialist garage.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating an airbag	172
Switching off front passenger airbag	173 ■

Deactivating an airbag

 **First read and observe the introductory information given on page 172.**

Deactivating an airbag should be considered only in the following cases, for example.

- When using a child seat on the front passenger seat, in which the child has its back to the vehicle's direction of travel (in some countries this must be in the direction of travel due to different legal regulations applying) » [page 177](#), *Transporting children safely*.
- If not being able to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted. ▶

- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » [page 173](#), *Switching off front passenger airbag*.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA Partner to switch off any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag was switched off using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light  lights up for approx. 4 seconds after switching on the ignition and then flashes again for approx. 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag switched off with the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light  comes on for about 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.
- The warning light **OFF**   » [Fig. 164](#) on [page 173](#) comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA Partner will be able to inform you which airbags in your vehicle can/must be deactivated.

Switching off front passenger airbag



Fig. 164 Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation



First read and observe the introductory information given on [page 172](#).

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position  » [Fig. 164](#) **OFF**.
- Check whether the airbag indicator light   **OFF** in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF** in the middle of the dash panel remains lit when the ignition is turned on.

Switching on

- Switch off the ignition.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position  » [Fig. 164](#) **ON**.
- Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Check whether the airbag indicator light   **ON** in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON/OFF** in the middle of the dash panel remains lit when the ignition is turned on.

The warning light **ON** goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.



WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the airbag warning light **ON/OFF** (airbag switched off) flashes, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a ŠKODA specialist garage immediately.

Pedestrian protection

Pedestrian protection system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating principle _____ 175

Activating the system _____ 175

The Pedestrian protection system helps you reduce the impact of a collision with a pedestrian.

! WARNING

- Work or technical modifications on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Do not attach the front number plate in the holder. Instead, screw it onto the bumper in the area provided. The attached number plate holder impairs the functioning of the sensors and thus the assessment made to determine whether to activate the system or not.

i Note

- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the Pedestrian protection system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA Partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.
- We recommend that any modifications and repairs to the front bumper or bodywork be carried out by a ŠKODA Partner. Further information » page 188.

Operating principle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

The system is activated automatically in the event of a frontal collision with a pedestrian at speeds of 30-55 km/h. In the event of an impact, the rear section of the bonnet is raised by approx. 55 mm thus creating a crumple zone above the engine.

The system sensors are integrated in the front bumper.

The functional status of the system is indicated by the indicator light ⚡ in the instrument cluster » page 16.

In some cases, the system may be activated even if the vehicle did not collide with a pedestrian. This may be the case, for example, in the following situations.

- A frontal collision with a lamppost, a street light, column, etc.
- A frontal collision with an animal.
- Driving over a mound of snow.
- The suspension comes into contact with the road.
- Driving over pronounced corrugations perpendicular to the direction of travel.

Activating the system

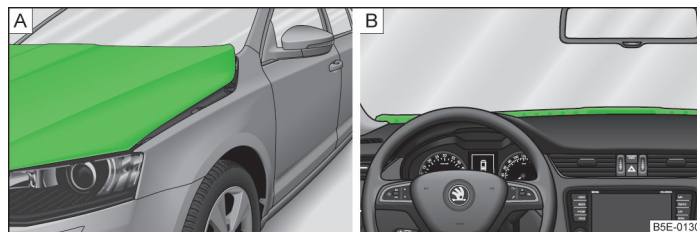


Fig. 165 Raised bonnet



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

If the pedestrian protection system was activated, the following steps are taken automatically.

- The bonnet is raised » Fig. 165 - [A].
- The warning light  in the instrument cluster lights up.

The bonnet can only be raised after the system has been activated if it was not deformed previously.

WARNING

- After activation, the system no longer meets its protective function. Drive to your nearest SKODA Partner immediately and adopting an appropriately cautious style of driving, who will replace the system. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- Adjust the height of the seat so that the raised bonnet does not block your view ahead » Fig. 165 - [B]. Stop driving if the view ahead remains impaired even at the highest seat position!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	178
Child safety and side airbag	179
Classification of child seats	179
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	179

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. The ECE-R standard stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
 - One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
 - Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
 - The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire travelling time!
- Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the air-bag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat. Further information » [page 178](#), *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » [page 65](#). After removing the child seat, re-install the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODAVehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.



Fig. 166 Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side/warning label

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 177.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » .
- Slide the front passenger seat all the way back.
- If the model of child seat allows it, bring the front passenger seat rest into the vertical position.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat.

WARNING

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat » [page 172](#), *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a child safety seat in which the child is seated with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat if the airbag is switched on. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This is also clearly stated on the sticker which is located on the B column on the front passenger side » [Fig. 166](#). The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door. For some countries, the sticker is also affixed to the sun visor of the front passenger.
- If a child safety seat in which the child faces in the direction of travel is used on the front passenger seat, the front passenger seat must be moved back and to the top fully. Move the backrest into the vertical position. Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- Once the child seat, in which the child is transported with the back to the direction of travel, is no longer used in the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Child safety and side airbag

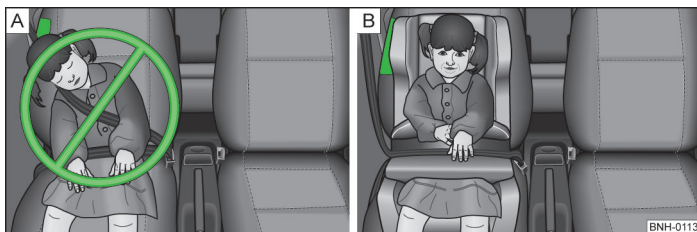


Fig. 167 Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured - risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 177.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 167 - .

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag so that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 167 - .

WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag - risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags - risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 177.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 177.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening elements

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking eyes of ISOFIX system	180
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system	180
Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system	181

Locking eyes of ISOFIX system

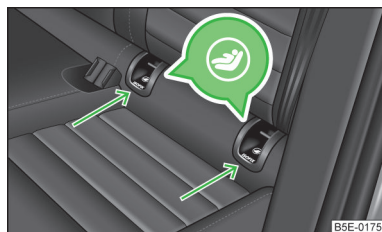


Fig. 168
Rear seat: ISOFIX



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 180.

There are two locking eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place » Fig. 168.

First remove the caps to access the locking eyes.

After removing the child seat, replace the caps.



WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the locking eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!



Note

Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 180.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size category of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size category of the child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger seat ^{b)}	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

^{a)} The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

^{b)} If the front passenger seat is fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system, this suits installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The category "Semi-Universal" means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

Locking eyes of the TOP TETHER system

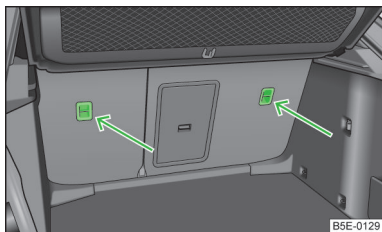


Fig. 169
Rear seat: TOP TETHER



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 180.

The locking eyes for attaching the belt to a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 169.

General Maintenance

Taking care of and cleaning the vehicle

Taking care of your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing the vehicle	183
Automatic car wash systems	183
Washing by hand	183
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	184
Preserving and polishing the vehicle paintwork	184
Chrome parts	184
Paint damage	184
Plastic parts	185
De-icing windows and exterior mirrors	185
Radio reception and aerial	185
Headlight lenses	185
Rubber seals	186
Door lock cylinders	186
Wheels	186
Underbody protection	186
Cavity protection	187
Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®	187
Fabric covers on electrically heated seats	187
Natural leather	187
Seat belts	188

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories that are available from ŠKODA Partners. The instructions for use on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Water and ice in the brake system when washing the vehicle in winter can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!
- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) – risk of cuts!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to health when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Cleaners containing solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.
- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the surface of paintwork.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged. With regard to the antenna, they may interfere with the radio or navigation.
- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- Do not attach scents and air fresheners to the dashboard – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- Do not clean the roof trim with a brush – risk of damage to the trim surface.
- Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors – always use the electric controls.

- For Alcantara® do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners, or similar agents.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.



For the sake of the environment

- Used cans of vehicle care products represent a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.
- Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.



Note

Due to potential issues with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, the special tools and knowledge required, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle is completed by a ŠKODA Partner.

Washing the vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

The best protection for your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing and wax treatment.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends, for example, on the following factors.

- Frequency of use.
- Parking situation (garage, below trees, etc.).
- Season of the year.
- Weather conditions.
- Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

Automatic car wash systems



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Your vehicle can be washed in automatic car wash systems.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (closing the windows including the sliding/tilting roof, etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof luggage rack, two-way radio aerial – it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

It is important to clean and degrease the lips of the windscreen wiper rubbers after passing through the automatic vehicle wash system.

Washing by hand



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

When washing by hand, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off as much as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof. Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork. Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.



WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!



CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

Preserving and polishing the vehicle paintwork



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly. Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.



CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork of the vehicle in a dusty environment, otherwise the paintwork can be scratched.

Chrome parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth. If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.



CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment, otherwise they can be scratched.

Paint damage



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Slight damage to paintwork such as scratches, scuffs or traces of chip damage must be treated immediately.

The ŠKODA Partners have a range of matching **touch-up pens** or **spray cans** available in the colour of your vehicle.



Note

We recommend that any repairs to damaged paintwork are carried out by a ŠKODA Partner.

Plastic parts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 182.

Plastic parts can be cleaned using a damp cloth. If this does not prove to be adequate, the parts can be treated with **special solvent-free plastic cleaning products**.

Paint care products are not suitable for plastic parts.

De-icing windows and exterior mirrors

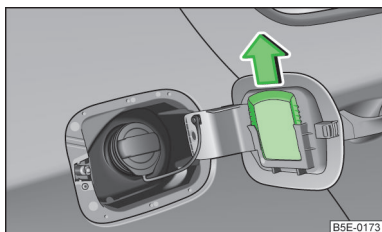


Fig. 170
Fuel filler flap: Ice scraper



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 182.

A scraper to remove snow and ice from the windows and mirrors is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

➤ Remove the scraper from the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 170.

Clean the windows from the inside on a regular basis.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.



CAUTION

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand, and salt must not be removed from the window glass and mirrors – risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Never remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of formation of cracks in the glass!
- When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.

Radio reception and aerial



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 182.

Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can disrupt the radio signal even causing it to fail completely.

With factory-fitted radios and navigation, the aerial for the radio reception can be installed at different locations in the vehicle.

- On the inside of the rear window along with the rear window heater.
- On the inside of the rear side windows.
- On the roof.

Headlight lenses



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 182.

Use soap and clean water to clean the plastic headlight lenses.



CAUTION

- **Never** wipe the headlights dry and do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause the formation of cracks on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Rubber seals



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

The rubber seals on doors, door panels, and the sliding roof remain smoother and last longer if the seals are treated regularly with a suitable rubber care product. This helps to prevent leakages and premature wear of the seals. Rubber seals which are well cared for also do not stick together in cold winter weather.

Door lock cylinders



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.



Note

We recommend that suitable materials from ŠKODA Original Accessories are used for maintaining the door lock cylinders.

Wheels



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis. Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion from the wheel rims otherwise the material will be affected. Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.



WARNING

Water, ice and grit in the brake system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!



CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.



Note

We recommend that any repairs to damaged paintwork are carried out by a ŠKODA Partner.

Underbody protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

As damage to the **protective layer** when driving cannot be ruled out completely, we recommend that you inspect the protective layer on the underside of your vehicle and on the chassis at specific intervals – preferably at the beginning and end of the winter.

ŠKODA Partners have suitable **spray products** and the necessary equipment available, and are familiar with the instructions for use. We therefore recommend that touch-up work or additional corrosion protection measures are carried out by a ŠKODA Partner.



WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite – risk of fire!

Cavity protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated. If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.



WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

The artificial leather can be cleaned using a damp cloth. If this does not prove sufficient, only use cleaning agents designed specifically for this purpose.

Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat covers from the direct rays of the sun to prevent fading. Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, luggage compartment cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam. Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth. Use a cloth and a specific cleaning agent to clean the roof trim.

Some clothing materials, such as dark denim, do, in part, not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers (fabric or leather) even when used correctly. This particularly applies to light seat covers (fabric or leather). This is not a defect in the seat cover, but poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.



CAUTION

Do not use any leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat covers.

Fabric covers on electrically heated seats



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Do not clean the seat covers **using moisture** as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Natural leather



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Depending on the amount of wear-and-tear, the leather should be cleaned on a regular basis.

Normal cleaning

Clean soiled areas of the leather with cotton or woollen cloth slightly moistened in water.

Severe soiling

Ensure that the leather is not soaked through at any point and that no water gets into the stitching of the seams.

Dry off the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

Removing stains

Remove fresh **water-based** stains (e.g., coffee, tea, juices, blood) with an absorbent cloth or household cleaning paper. A specific cleaning agent is required for dried-on stains.

Remove fresh **grease-based** stains (e.g. butter, mayonnaise, chocolate, etc.) with an absorbent cloth, household cleaning paper, or use a suitable cleaner if the stain has not yet penetrated into the surface.

Use a grease solvent to remove **grease stains which have dried in**.

Remove **specific stains** (e.g. ball-point pens, marker pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe polish, etc.) with a special stain remover suitable for leather.

Leather care

Treat the leather roughly every six months with a suitable leather care product.

Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

Dry off the leather with a soft, dry cloth.

Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.

Clean the leather every 2 to 3 months, remove any fresh stains as they occur.

Also look after the leather dye. Refresh any areas with a special coloured leather cream as required.

The leather is a natural material with specific properties. During the use of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g. wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

CAUTION

- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may damage the leather and leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface that cannot be accepted as justified claims.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.

Seat belts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 182.

Keep the seat belts clean!

Clean dirty seat belts using a mild soapy solution and remove coarse dirt with a soft brush!

Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis.

Belt webbing which has become severely soiled may prevent the inertia reel from reeling up the belt properly.



WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric. The seat belts must also not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (such as acids etc.).
- Seat belts which have damage to the webbing, connections, inertia reel or lock should be replaced by a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- Inertia reel belts must be completely dried before being reeled up.

Accessories, changes and replacement of parts



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Repairs and technical modifications	189
Component protection	189
Modifications and impairments of the airbag system	189

If you want to retrofit your vehicle with accessories, if a vehicle part is to be replaced with a new one, or when needing to make technical changes, the following instructions must be observed.

- Always seek advice from a ŠKODA Partner **before** purchasing any accessories or parts and **before** making any technical changes » .
- Technical modifications must satisfy the latest guidelines and advice issued by ŠKODA.
- We recommend you have any modifications and adjustments on the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Partner. Partners can provide more detailed information and also carry out all the necessary work professionally and correctly.
- Only install such parts whose version and properties meet factory-installed parts on the vehicle.

Adhering to the advice given will prevent any kind of damage to the vehicle, and its travelling and operating safety will be maintained. The vehicle also complies with German road transport regulations (StVZO).

WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- We recommend you only use ŠKODA original accessories and ŠKODA original parts on your vehicle. Only by doing so can you guarantee reliability, safety and suitability.
- ŠKODA cannot assume any liability for products which have not been approved by ŠKODA even though these may be products with a type approval or have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Note

ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners who will also professionally undertake the assembly of the purchased parts.

Repairs and technical modifications



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 188.

Any damage caused by technical changes made without consent by ŠKODA is excluded from the warranty – see the warranty certificate.

Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. In other words, the vehicle's roadworthiness may be put at risk and increased wear on parts may arise.

Repairs and technical modifications must comply with ŠKODA guidelines.

WARNING

- Repairs and technical modifications which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause damage and can seriously impair the effectiveness of driver assist system – risk of accident and serious injury!
- We recommend having these repairs and modifications replaced by a ŠKODA specialist garage.



For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Component protection



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 188.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

The component protection was developed as a protection mechanism for:

- ▶ impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft);
- ▶ impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle;
- ▶ the possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a ŠKODA specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Modifications and impairments of the airbag system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 188.

We recommend that any modifications and repairs to the front bumper, doors, front seats, headliner or bodywork be carried out by a ŠKODA Partner. These vehicle parts may include system components for the airbag system.



WARNING

- Airbag modules cannot be repaired, but must be replaced.
- Repairs and modifications which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause damage, operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!



WARNING (Continued)

- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- A modification to the suspension of the vehicle including the use of non-approved rim-tyre combinations can alter the functioning of the airbag and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident.
- Parts of the airbag system may be damaged during installation/removal of system parts and when performing other repair work. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling	191
Unleaded petrol	192
Diesel fuel	193

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 171 on page 191 - [B].

! WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident this can get damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!

Refuelling

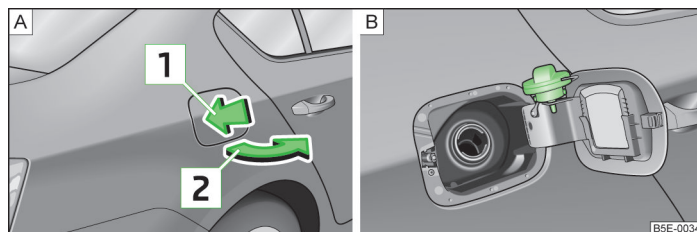


Fig. 171 Open fuel filler flap/fuel filler flap with cap unscrewed

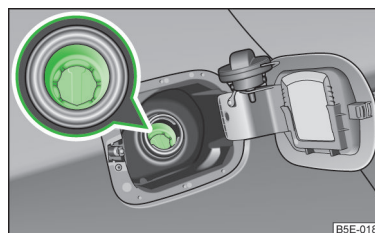


Fig. 172
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 191.

Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heating system (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

- Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 171.
- Open the flap manually in the direction of the arrow [2].
- Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and unlock it by moving it to the left with the vehicle key.
- Unscrew the filler cap by turning it to the left and place the cap into the bore of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 171 - [B].
- Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » [A].

- Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.
- Turn the filler cap to the right until it clicks into place.
- Hold the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler tube with one hand and lock it by turning the vehicle key to the right and remove the key.
- Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.
- Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines

The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with an incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 172. This guard means it is only possible to refuel with the diesel pump nozzle.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

! CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister – danger of contaminating the body.

i Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **50 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Unleaded petrol



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 191.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 228** (in Germany: **standard DIN 51626-1** or **E10** for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95 RON** and **91 RON** or **DIN 51626-2** or **E5** for unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON** and **98 RON**).

Prescribed fuel – unleaded fuel 95/91 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON**. Unleaded petrol **91 RON** can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol min. 95 RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95 RON**.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating **91 RON** if petrol with the octane rating **95 RON** is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91 RON** must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Unleaded petrol with higher octane number

Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.

On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.

On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON

Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98 RON**. Unleaded petrol **95 RON** can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane rating **91 RON** of unleaded fuel with octane rating **98 RON** or **95 RON** is not available.

Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91 RON** must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

Fuel additives

Only use unleaded petrol, which complies with the standard EN 228 (in Germany: standard DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 91 RON or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded fuel with an octane rating of 95 RON and 98 RON), as these meet all of the requirements for fault-free engine operation. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used.

! CAUTION

- All ŠKODA vehicles with petrol engines must only be operated with unleaded petrol. Just filling the tank with leaded petrol once will damage the exhaust system!
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible. ►

- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. Do not use any LRP fuels (lead replacement petrol) with metal parts – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!
- Do not use any fuels with metal parts – risk of serious damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!
- The use of unsuitable fuel additives can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Diesel fuel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 191.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel**, which complies with the standard **EN 590** (standard **DIN 51628** in Germany, standard **ÖNORM C 1590** in Austria, **GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004** in Russia).

All diesel engines can be operated with diesel fuel with a **maximum** content of 7 % bio-fuel (**B7**), which complies with the standard **DIN 52638** in Germany (in Austria **C 1590**, in France **EN 590**).

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -25 °C.

Fuel additives

Fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar products) must not be added to the diesel fuel.



CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- Damage caused by using diesel fuel which does not comply with the standards are excluded from the warranty.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that the fuel system is cleaned by a ŠKODA Partner.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.
- Your vehicle is not adapted for use of biofuel (RME), therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel (RME) can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Comply with the proscribed oil change intervals.

Engine compartment



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	195
Engine compartment overview	196
Radiator fan	196
Windscreen washer system	196



WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scolding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

! WARNING

Before beginning work in the engine compartment, please read the following advice.

- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position P.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

! WARNING

While working in the engine compartment, please read the following advice.

- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always safely store the coolant additive in its original container out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed - consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items such as cloths or tools in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

! WARNING

Whenever working in the engine compartment while the engine is running, you must pay heed to the following warning instructions.

- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, alternator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition unit – risk of death!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk of death! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

! WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical system.

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

! WARNING

- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep out of reach of children!
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. This is why after closing the bonnet, the lock must always be checked to ensure it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!
- Never open the bonnet using the locking lever.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

In view of the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids, the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids are changed by a ŠKODA Partner as part of the inspection service.

i Note

- If there is anything you are not sure about concerning fluids, please consult a ŠKODA Partner.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet



Fig. 173 Bonnet release lever/release lever

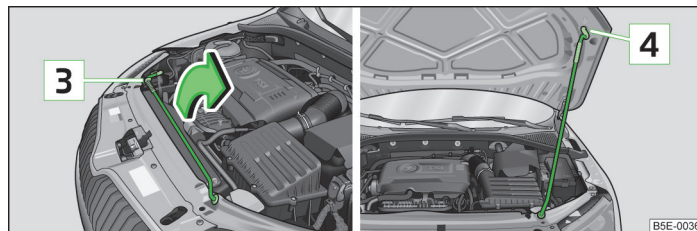


Fig. 174 Securing the bonnet

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 193.

When the front door is closed, the bonnet cannot be unlocked with lever 1.

Opening

- Open the front left door.
- Pull the release lever under the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 173.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

- Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
- Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.
- Take the bonnet support out of its holder 3 in the direction of the arrow and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support in the opening 4 designed for it.

Closing

- Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Insert the bonnet support into the holder 3 designed to hold it.
- Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm - do **not push it in!**

Check whether the bonnet has been closed properly. Also make sure a vehicle with an **opened** bonnet does not appear in the instrument cluster display » page 24.

Engine compartment overview

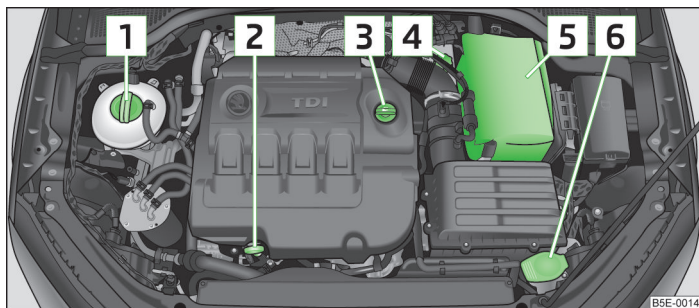


Fig. 175 Principle sketch: Engine compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 193.

1	Coolant expansion reservoir	200
2	Engine oil dipstick	198
3	Engine oil filler opening	199
4	Brake fluid reservoir	201
5	Battery (below a cover)	202
6	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	196

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 193.

After switching off the ignition, the fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

Windscreen washer system

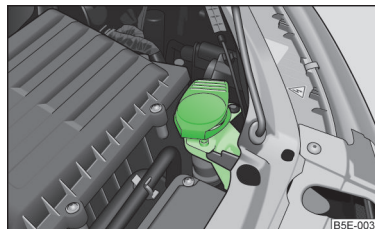


Fig. 176
Engine compartment: Wind-
screen washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 193.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlight cleaning system.

The **capacity** of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (**in winter additionally with antifreeze**) which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specifications and capacity	198
Checking the oil level	198
Refilling	199
Changing	199

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Partners are informed about the latest changes by ŠKODA. We therefore recommend that the oil change is completed by a ŠKODA Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » [page 198](#).

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 193](#).
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious engine damage! Damage, which results from such product, are excluded from the warranty.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specifications and capacity



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 197.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	VW 504 00	4.0
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI		
1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI		
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI		5.2

Diesel engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI	VW 507 00	4.6
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI		

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	VW 502 00	4.0
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI		
1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI		
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI		5.2

Diesel engines	Specification	Capacity (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI	VW 507 00	4.6
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI		



CAUTION

■ If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **max. 0.5 l** only of the following engine oils may be used until the next oil change:

- For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN/API SM;
- For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

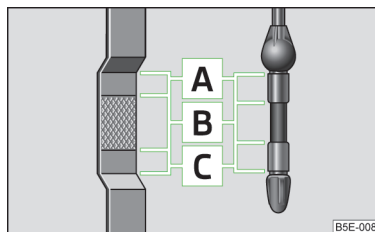


Fig. 177
Dipstick



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 197.

The dipstick indicates the level of oil in the engine » Fig. 177.

Checking the oil level

- Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.
- Switch off the engine.
- Open the bonnet.
- Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil sump and remove the dipstick.
- Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
- Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range **A**

No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range **B**

Oil **can** be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range **A**.

Oil level within range **C**

Oil **must** be replenished if the oil level is in the range **B** or lower.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l / 1000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range **A**, but not above, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

The warning icon  is displayed in the instrument cluster if the oil level is too low » [page 20](#). Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- The oil level must not exceed the range **A** » [Fig. 177](#) – risk of damage to the exhaust system!
- If the oil level is above the range **A**, , do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Refilling

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 197](#).

- > Check the engine oil level » [page 198](#).
- > Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » [Fig. 175](#) on [page 196](#).
- > Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » [page 198](#).
- > Check the oil level » [page 198](#).
- > Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 197](#).

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals stated in the Service schedule or according to the service interval indicator » [page 11](#).

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Capacity	200
Checking the coolant level	200
Refilling	201

The coolant consists of water with a concentration of coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents the formation of scale.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40 %.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50 %.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the amount of coolant additive can only be increased up to a maximum of 60 % (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use the same antifreeze written on the antifreeze expansion tank » [Fig. 178](#) on [page 200](#).

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 193](#).
-  Do not continue your journey, if for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the prevailing conditions! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to be less than 40 %.
- Over 60 % of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.

- Other coolant additives that do not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the anticorrosion effect.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark **A** » Fig. 178 on page 200.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a ŠKODA Partner, otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

Capacity

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 199.

Coolant capacity¹⁾

Petrol engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI	8.9
1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI	8.9
1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI	10.2
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	7.8
Diesel engines	Capacities (in litres)
1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR	8.4
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR - MG/DSG	11.6/11.9

¹⁾ On vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation), the coolant capacity is approx. 1 l larger.

Checking the coolant level

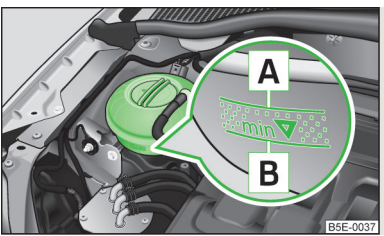


Fig. 178
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 199.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Inspecting the coolant level

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the bonnet.
- Check the level of coolant in the coolant expansion bottle » Fig. 178.

Coolant level within range **A**

No coolant must be refilled.

The level may also rise slightly above the **A** marking when the engine is warm.

Coolant level within range **A** and **B**

Coolant can be refilled.

When the engine is cold, the coolant level must lie between the **A** and **B** markings.

Coolant level within range under **B**

Coolant **must** be refilled.

When the engine is cold, refill the coolant between the markings **A** and **B**.

If the coolant level in the expansion reservoir is too low, this is indicated by lighting of the warning icon  in the instrument cluster » [page 19](#),  *Coolant*. Nevertheless, we recommend that you check the coolant level regularly directly at the reservoir.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Refilling



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 199.

Only refill with new coolant.

- Switch off the engine.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
- Replenish the coolant.
- Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, just use water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and the coolant additive restored by a ŠKODA specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Level check	201
Changing	202



WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » [page 193](#).
- If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking,  do not continue your journey – risk of accident! Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!



CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.



Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection services.

Level check

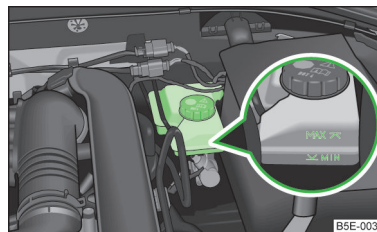


Fig. 179
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 201.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the bonnet.
- Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » [Fig. 179](#). The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the warning light  lighting up in the instrument cluster » [page 14](#),  *Brake system*.

Changing

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 201.**

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
➤ VW 50114;
➤ FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Battery cover	204
Checking the battery electrolyte level	204
Charging a vehicle battery	204
Disconnect and reconnecting the vehicle battery	205
Automatic load deactivation	205

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Description
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage occurring. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery be undertaken by a ŠKODA Partner.

 **WARNING**

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety.

- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by safety glasses or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, skin cracks).

WARNING (Continued)

- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the relevant eye immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, seek immediate medical assistance!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with a naked flame and light.
- Smoking or to carrying out any activities which produce sparks are prohibited.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery - risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery - risk of explosion and caustic burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low - risk of explosion and caustic burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object, cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting of lead struts, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all of the electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (-) on the battery.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first of all disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery, followed by the positive terminal (+).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first of all connect the positive terminal (+) of the battery, followed by the negative terminal (-). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly - risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork - risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years. ■

Battery cover

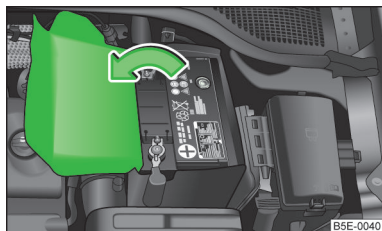


Fig. 180
Engine compartment: Polyester
cover of vehicle battery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 202.

The battery is located in the engine compartment - in some models, underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 180.

➤ Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

The edge of the polyester battery cover is inserted between the battery and the side wall of the battery cover when working on the battery.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

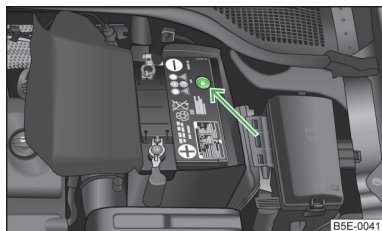


Fig. 181
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level
indicator



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 202.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye » Fig. 181, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

➤ Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.

➤ Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend you have the electrolyte level checked by a ŠKODA specialist garage from time to time, especially in the following cases.

➤ High external temperatures.

➤ Longer day trips.

➤ After each charge.

Winter time

The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.**

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a ŠKODA Partner before the start of the winter.



Note

The battery electrolyte level is periodically checked by a ŠKODA Partner as part of the Inspection Service.

Charging a vehicle battery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 202.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

➤ Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.

- Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.**

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, so-called "quick-charging".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

Replacing the vehicle battery

When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable types of vehicle batteries can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

We recommend that the battery is replaced by a ŠKODA Partner, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

! WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

! CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » [page 223, Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system](#).

i Note

We recommend having the quick charging of vehicle batteries undertaken by a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Disconnect and reconnecting the vehicle battery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 202.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free:

Operation	Operating measure
Electrical power window (operational faults)	» page 43
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» <i>Operating instructions for Infotainment Radio</i> or » <i>Operating instructions for Infotainment Navigation</i>
Setting the clock	» page 11
Data in the multifunction display are deleted	» page 25

i Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a ŠKODA Partner to ensure the full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 202.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is subjected to heavy loads. This manifests itself by the following:

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or in case of emergency shut off completely.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place. ■

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Life of tyres	208
New tyres	209
Unidirectional tyres	210
Tyre control display	210
Spare wheel	211
Full wheel trim	212
Wheel bolts	212
Wheel bolts	212

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.

- During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- On all four wheels, use only radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- For safety reasons, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *load bearing capacity* of mounted tyres – risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible *speed* of mounted tyres – risk of accident!
- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest ŠKODA specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction will adversely affect the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding damage and wear of tyres.

- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface particularly at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience “aquaplaning” (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – “swimming” on a wet road surface).

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.

- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of an accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater rolling resistance. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.

- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never treat them with grease or oil.

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving – risk of accident!

! WARNING

- Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.
- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
 - Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
 - The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

! CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » [page 211](#), *Spare wheel*.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost dust caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or the opposite running direction, drive carefully as the optimum characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.



For the sake of the environment

Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

i Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres is carried out by a ŠKODA Partner.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Life of tyres

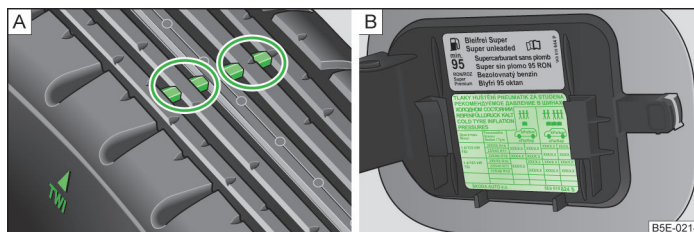


Fig. 182 Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/Open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre size and tyre inflation pressure

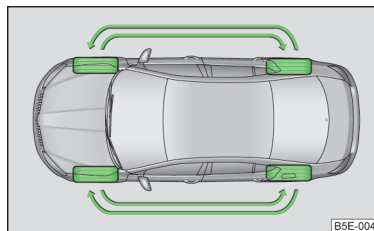


Fig. 183 Changing wheels around



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 207.

The life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style, and other circumstances. If you follow the advice below you can extend the life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre inflation pressures for **summer tyres** are indicated on the inside of the fuel filler flap » [Fig. 182](#) - [B](#). The inflation pressures for **winter tyres** are 20 kPa (0.2 bar) higher than those for summer tyres.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater payload, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, there are a wide range of influences which may result in an imbalance. This may make itself felt by a vibration in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors

An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres.

Tyre damage

Drive over curbs and other such obstacles slowly and, where possible, at a right angle in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre profile immediately.

Changing wheels around

If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend changing the front wheels around with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 183. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you change the tyres around every 10000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to obtain optimal tyre life.

Storing tyres

Mark them previously used tyres so that you are able to fit them on again to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are located multiple times depending on the make and are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre » Fig. 182 - [A]. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age

Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. Therefore, we recommend not to use summer or winter tyres that are older than 6 years or 4 years respectively.

New tyres



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 207.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings

195/65 R 15 91 T

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 182 on page 208 - [B]
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 182 on page 208 - [B]
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial » Fig. 182 on page 208 - [B]
15	Diameter of wheel in inches » Fig. 182 on page 208 - [B]
91	Load index » !
T	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly only on the *inside of wheel*). e.g.

DOT ... 10 13...

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load on each individual tyre.

91 615 kg

92 630 kg

93 650 kg

95	690 kg
97	730 kg
99	775 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with mounted tyres for the respective category.

Q	160 km/h
R	170 km/h
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
U	200 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h

! CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol for your vehicle are listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 207.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are mainly.

- ✓ Increased driving stability.
- ✓ Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- ✓ Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Tyre control display



Fig. 184
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 207.

Calibration

After changing the tyre inflation pressure » [page 208](#), **!** in section *Introduction*, after changing one or several wheels, the position of a wheel on the vehicle or when the warning light lights up while driving, a **calibration** of the system must be carried out as follows:

- Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » [page 208](#).
- Switch on the ignition.
- Start the system calibration.

On vehicles **with Infotainment** » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.

On vehicles **with the radio preinstallation**.

- Press and hold the symbol button  » [Fig. 184](#) for longer than 2 seconds.

While pressing the button, the warning light  lights up. At the same time the system memory is erased and the new calibration is started, which is confirmed with an audible signal and then the warning light  goes out.

If the warning light  does not go out after the calibration, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Tyre pressure indicator

The warning light  lights up when the following occurs.

- The tyre inflation pressure is low.
- The structure of the tyre is damaged.
- The vehicle is loaded on one side.

- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are mounted.
- The spare wheel is mounted.
- One wheel per axle was changed.

! WARNING

- When the warning light  illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light  can be delayed or does not light up at all.

! CAUTION

- The tyre control display does therefore not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, as the system cannot detect an even loss of pressure.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10000 km or once a year.

Spare wheel



Fig. 185
Luggage compartment: Spare wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 207.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the luggage compartment and is fixed in place with a special bolt ➤ Fig. 185.

Before removing the spare wheel, the box containing the vehicle tool kit must be removed.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted ➤ .

Install a wheel having the appropriate version and dimensions as soon as possible.

No other summer or winter tyres must be mounted on the rim of the spare wheel R 18.

Temporary spare wheel

A yellow warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use this wheel.

- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Be specially attentive when driving.
- The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure of the standard tyres. The temporary spare wheel R 18 must have an inflation pressure of 420 kPa!
- Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest ŠKODA specialist garage as it is not intended for continuous use.

! WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

! CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning label on the spare wheel.

Full wheel trim



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 207.

Pulling off

- Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install

- Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the valve opening provided.
- Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.



CAUTION

- Use the pressure of your hand, do not knock the full wheel trim! Avoid heavy knocks when the trim is not yet inserted in the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
- Make sure that the anti-theft wheel bolt is mounted in the bore in the region of the valve » page 219, *Securing wheels against theft*.
- If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 186
Remove the cap

B5E-0045



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 207.

Pulling off

- Push the plastic clip sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the clip are positioned at the collar of the cap » Fig. 186.
- Remove the cap.

Install

- Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Wheel bolts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 207.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels, e.g. light alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts of the correct length and shape of spherical cap. This is essential to ensure that the wheels are tightly fitted and that the brake system operates properly.

Operation in winter



Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres _____ 213

Snow chains _____ 213

Winter tyres



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 212.

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres. Summer tyres on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C have less grip. This is especially true of **low-profile tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

To achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all 4 wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The winter tyres speed limit is set in the menu » *operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems (CAR button)*.



For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 212.

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
6J x 15 ^{a)}	43 mm	195/65 R15

6J x 16 ^{b)}	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17 ^{b)}	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 13 mm.

b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.



CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First-aid kit and warning triangle	214
Fire extinguisher	215
Car tool kit	215 ■

First-aid kit and warning triangle

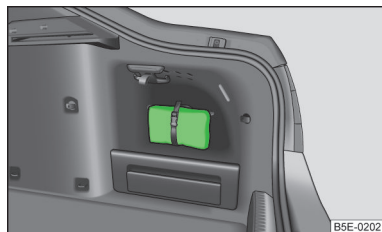


Fig. 187
Placing of the first-aid kit

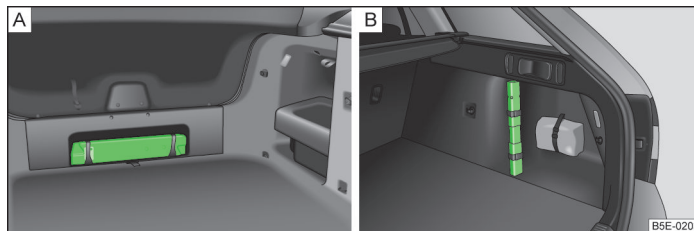


Fig. 188 Placing of the warning triangle: Octavia/Octavia Estate



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 214.

First-aid box

The first aid kit A is attached by a strap in the right-hand storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 187.

Warning triangle - Octavia

The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 188 - [A].

Warning triangle - Octavia Estate

The warning triangle can be secured with straps in the right storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 188 - [B].



WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.



Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Fire extinguisher



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 214.

The fire extinguisher is attached with straps in a holder under the driver seat.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

i Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Car tool kit

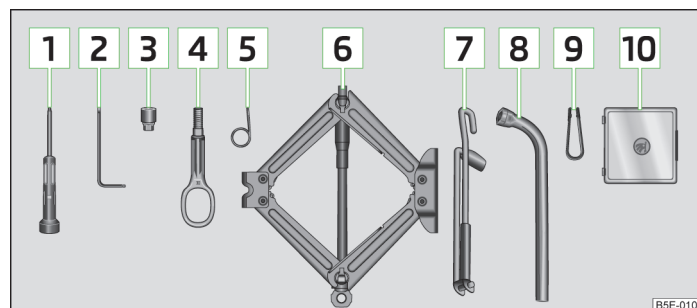


Fig. 189 Vehicle tool kit



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 214.

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

Tool kit components » Fig. 189.

- 1 Screwdriver
- 2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
- 3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 4 Towing eye
- 5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- 6 Car jack
- 7 Crank for the jack
- 8 Wheel wrench
- 9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
- 10 Replacement bulb set

Screw the jack back into its home position after use to allow you to store it in the box with the toolkit. ►

! WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the luggage compartment.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparations	216
Changing a wheel	217
Subsequent steps	217
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	218
Raising the vehicle	218
Securing wheels against theft	219

! WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres which are different from those it was fitted with at the works, follow these guidelines » [page 209](#), *New tyres*.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for lifting the vehicle.

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine with the vehicle sitting on the raised jack – risk of injury.

! CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are fastened too tightly, it can cause damage to the anti-theft wheel bolt and adapter.

i Note

- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preparations

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 216.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel: ▶

- Let **all of the occupants get out**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
- Switch off the engine.
- Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox into position **P**.
- Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
- If a trailer is connected, remove it.
- Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » [page 215](#) and the **spare wheel** » [page 211](#) from the luggage compartment.

Changing a wheel



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 216.

- Remove the full wheel trim » [page 212](#) or caps » [page 212](#).
- First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » [page 218](#).
- Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » [page 218](#).
- Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
- Remove the wheel.
- Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- Lower the vehicle.
- Alternately tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (crosswise) and then tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt » [page 218](#).
- Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

WARNING

- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
- When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » [page 207](#).

Subsequent steps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 216.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

- Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » [page 211](#).
- Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
- **Check the tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
- Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
- Change the damaged wheel or consult a ŠKODA specialist garage about repair possibilities.



WARNING

- If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

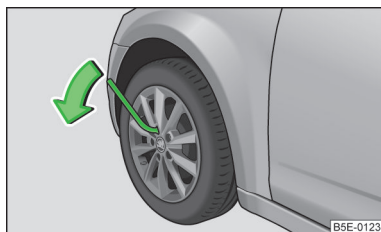


Fig. 190
Changing a wheel: Loosening
the wheel bolts



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 216.

Loosening

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 190.

Tightening

- Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt up to the stop¹⁾.
- Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 190 until it is tight.

! WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – risk of injury!

i Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

¹⁾ Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 219.

Raising the vehicle

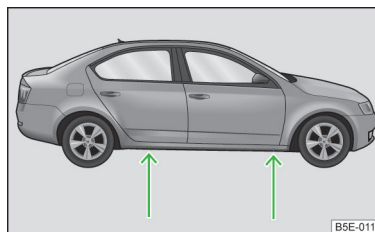


Fig. 191
Jacking points for positioning
lifting jack

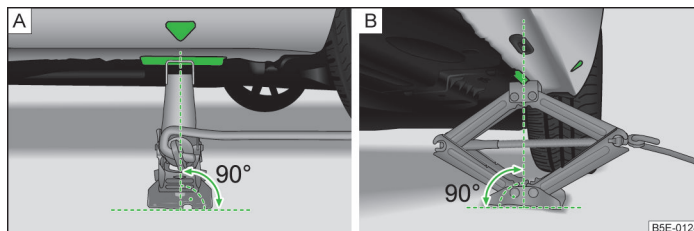


Fig. 192 **Attach lifting jack**



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 216.

Position the car jack below the jacking point that is closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 191. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

- Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack » page 215.
- Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
- Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 192 - [B].
- Support the base plate of the jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is located in a vertical position to the area where the claw grasps the web » Fig. 192 - [A].

➤ Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

! WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

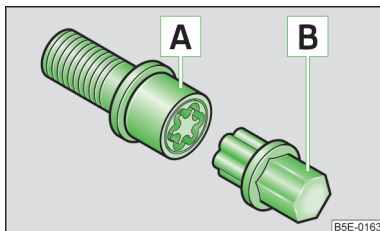


Fig. 193
Principle sketch: Anti-theft
wheel bolt with adapter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 216.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 215, Car tool kit.

- Insert the adapter **B** » Fig. 193 with its toothed side fully into the inner tooth of the safety wheel bolt **A** until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.
- Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter **B** up to the stop.

i Note

- Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from a ŠKODA Partner, if necessary.
- We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Breakdown kit	220
Preparations for the use of the breakdown kit	220
Sealing and inflating the tyre	221
Checking after 10 minutes	221

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get to the nearest ŠKODA specialist garage.

The repair can be undertaken on the vehicle immediately.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre!

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- There is damage to the rim.
- The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
- The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
- If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
- The sealant is hazardous to health. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations. ►

i Note

Immediately replace the wheel that was repaired using the breakdown kit or consult a ŠKODA specialist garage about repair possibilities.

Breakdown kit

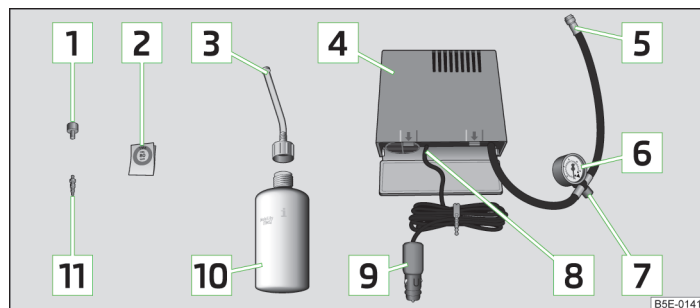


Fig. 194 Components of the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 219.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit

- 1** Valve remover
- 2** Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"
- 3** Inflation hose with plug
- 4** Air compressor
- 5** Tyre inflation hose
- 6** Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 7** Air release valve
- 8** ON and OFF switch
- 9** 12 volt cable connector
- 10** Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
- 11** Replacement valve core

The valve remover **1** has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core **11**.

i Note

- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
- A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Preparations for the use of the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 219.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Let **all of the occupants get out**. While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier).
- Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
- Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
- Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » [page 219](#).
- If a trailer is connected, remove it.
- Remove the **breakdown kit** from the luggage compartment.
- Stick the sticker **2** » [Fig. 194](#) on page 220 on the dash panel in view of the driver.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover **1** to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 219.

Sealing

- Forcefully shake the tyre inflator bottle **10** » Fig. 194 on page 220 several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose **3** onto the tyre inflator bottle **10** clockwise. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose **3** and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle **10** with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover **1**.

Inflating

- Screw the tyre inflation hose **5** » Fig. 194 on page 220 of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the air release valve **7** is closed.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector **9** into 12 Volt socket » page 74.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch **8**.
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » **!**!
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose **5** from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose **5** back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » **!**.
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose **5** from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 221.



WARNING

- During inflation, the tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot – risk of injury!
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – risk of fire!
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. **!** Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage!



CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Checking after 10 minutes



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 219.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

- **!** **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.
- Seek help from a ŠKODA specialist garage.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
- Continue driving carefully to the nearest ŠKODA specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle	222
Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system	223

! WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » [page 193, Engine compartment](#).
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – risk of caustic burns!
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

! CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

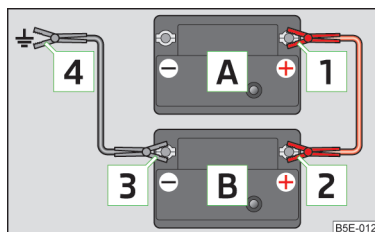


Fig. 195
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 222.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp **1** to the positive terminal of the discharged battery **A** » [Fig. 195](#).
- Attach clamp **2** to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach clamp **3** to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach the clamp **4** to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

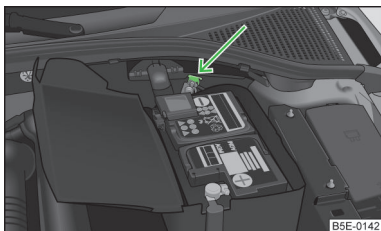


Fig. 196
Engine compartment: Earth



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 222.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable must be connected only to the ground point of the engine » Fig. 196.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye	224
Rear towing eye	224
Vehicles with a towing device	225

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

The following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

- » Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- » On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- » Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not blocked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- » Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.



CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 222, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 224, *Front towing eye* or » page 224, *Rear towing eye* to the **detachable ball head of the towing device** » page 152.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

i Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.

Front towing eye

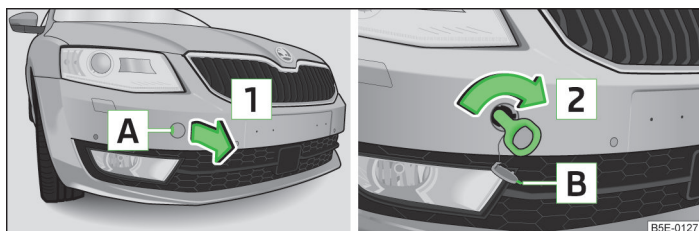


Fig. 197 Front bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 223.

Removing/installing the cap

- Press on the cap in the area **A** » Fig. 197.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- After screwing out the towing eye, thread the area **B** of the cap under the left hand side of the bore in the front bumper. Afterwards press onto the right side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

- Manually screw in the towing eye in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 197 until it stops » **i**.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

- Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow **2**.

! CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

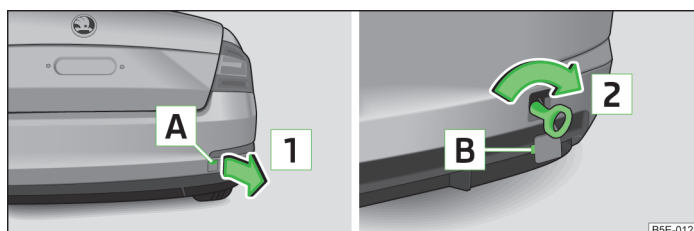


Fig. 198 Rear bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **i** on page 223.

Removing/installing the cap

- Press on the cap in the area **A** » Fig. 198.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- After screwing out the towing eye, thread the area **B** of the cap under the upper hand side of the bore in the rear bumper. Afterwards press onto the lower side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

- Manually screw in the towing eye in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 198 until it stops » **i**.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

➤ Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow [2].

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap » [page 225, Vehicles with a towing device](#).

! CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a towing device

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 223](#).

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » [page 152, Towing device](#).

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the standard reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

If this procedure is not observed, the vehicle may not meet the national legal provisions.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

i Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key _____ 225

Synchronising the remote control _____ 226

Replacing the battery in the radio remote control of the parking heating _____ 226

! CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- When replacing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

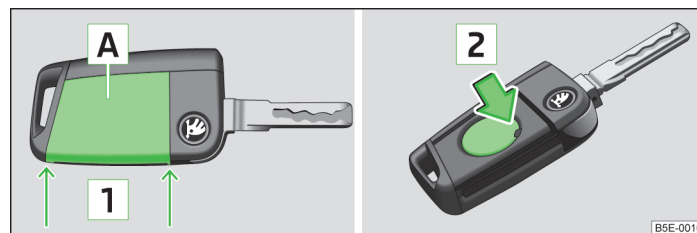


Fig. 199 Remove cover/take out battery

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on [page 225](#).

The battery is located under a cover [A](#) » [Fig. 199](#).

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA Partner to replace the key battery. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows. ►

- Flip out the key.
- Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows **1**.
- Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow **2**.
- Insert the new battery.
- Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

i Note

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » [page 226](#).

Synchronising the remote control

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 225.**

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key was replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- Press any button on the remote control key.
- Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Replacing the battery in the radio remote control of the parking heating

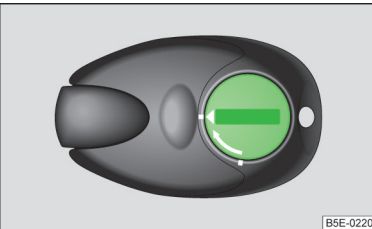


Fig. 200
Radio remote control: Battery cover

BSE-0220

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 225.**

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » [Fig. 111](#) on page 105.

- Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
- Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
- Replace the battery.
- Return the battery cover.
- Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door	227
Locking a door	227
Unlocking the boot lid	227
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	228 ■

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

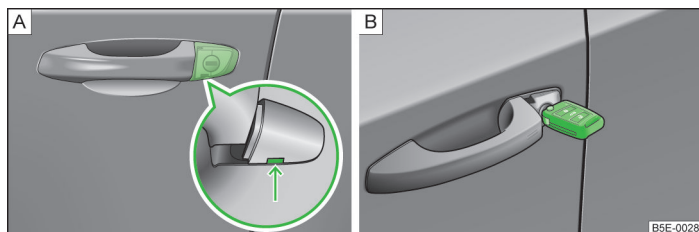


Fig. 201 Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder/locking cylinder with key

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 226.

- Pull on the handle.
- Push the vehicle key into the recess on the bottom side of the cover in the region of the arrow and fold it upwards » Fig. 201 - [A].
- Insert the vehicle key (the buttons facing upward) into the locking cylinder and lock/unlock the vehicle » Fig. 201 - [B].

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking a door

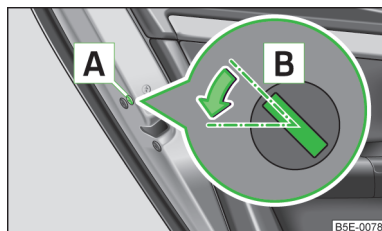


Fig. 202 Rear door: Emergency locking



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 226.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

- Remove the panel [A] » Fig. 202.
- Insert the key into the slot [B] and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
- Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside.

Unlocking the boot lid

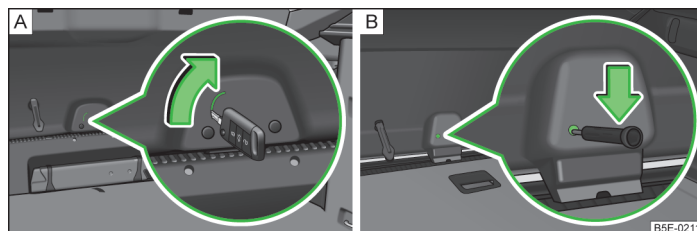


Fig. 203 Emergency unlocking: Octavia/Octavia Estate



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 226.

Unlocking (Octavia)

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 69.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as the stop » Fig. 203 - [A].
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- Open the luggage compartment lid.

Unlocking (Octavia Estate)

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 69.
- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening of the trim as far as it goes » Fig. 203 - [B].
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

- Open the luggage compartment lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

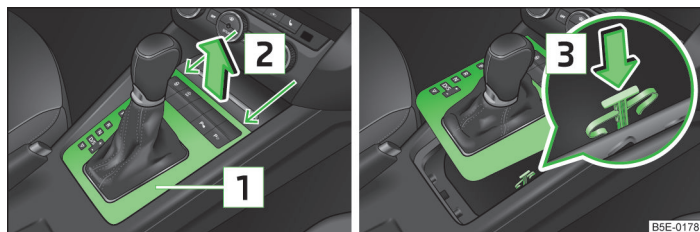


Fig. 204 Selector lever-emergency unlocking



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 226.

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Open the stowage compartment in front centre console » page 72.
- Grab hold of the cover **1** in the areas of the arrows and carefully raise it in the direction of the arrow **2** forwards and then backwards » Fig. 204.
- Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	228
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	229

! WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

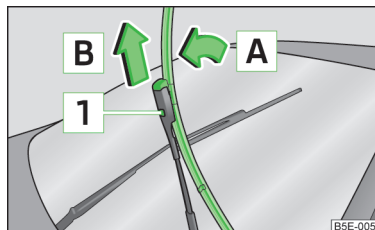


Fig. 205
Windscreen wiper blade



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 228.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

- Closing the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition off and on again.
- Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position **4** and keep it held for around 2 seconds » Fig. 42 on page 59.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

- Raise the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen » Fig. 205.
- Tilt the wiper blade as far as it can go in the direction of the windscreen wiper arm - arrow **A**.
- Hold the upper part of the windscreen wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism **1**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **B**.

Attaching the wiper blade

- Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.

- Fold the wiper arms back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position **4** » Fig. 42 on page 59.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

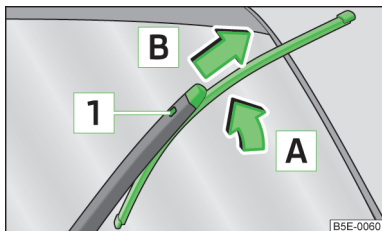


Fig. 206
Rear window wiper blade



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 228.

Removing the wiper blade

- Raise the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen » Fig. 206.
- Tilt the wiper blade as far as it can go in the direction of the windscreen wiper arm - arrow **A**.
- Hold the upper part of the windscreen wiper arm and unlock the securing mechanism **1**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **B**.

Attaching the wiper blade

- Push the windscreen wiper blade until the stop and it locks in place.
- Check that the wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel - LHD	231
Fuses in the dash panel - RHD	231
Fuse assignment in the dash panel	232
Fuses in the engine compartment	233
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment	233

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Replacing fuses

- Switch off the ignition and the appropriate consumer before changing a fuse.
- Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » [page 232](#), *Fuse assignment in the dash panel* or » [page 233](#), *Fuse assignment in the engine compartment*.
- Take the plastic clip located under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment, insert into the fuse and remove it » [Fig. 211](#) on page 233.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

The plastic clip can be found underneath the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » [Fig. 211](#) on page 233.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20

Colour	Maximum amperage
white	25
green/pink	30
orange/green	40
red	50

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 193](#).
- Never repair fuses and also do not replace them with a fuse of a higher amperage - risk of fire! A different electrical system could be damaged.

CAUTION

- Have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a ŠKODA specialist garage if a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time.
- The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. If the cover is not replaced properly, water may get into the fuse box - risk of vehicle damage!

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.

Fuses in the dash panel – LHD

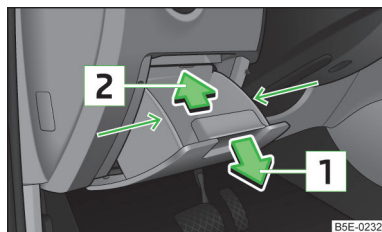


Fig. 207
Storage compartment on the driver's side: LHD



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 230.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Replacing fuses

- Open the storage compartment » page 71.
- Grab hold of the storage compartment in the area of the arrows » Fig. 207.
- Fold out the storage compartment by pulling in the direction of arrow **1**.
- Replace the appropriate fuse.
- Fold back the storage compartment by pressing into the secured position in the dash panel in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Close the storage compartment.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **I** on page 230.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the **storage compartment** in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Removing the storage compartment and replacing the fuse

- Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 208.
- Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Open the storage compartment.
- Unlock the brake rod of the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow **3** with the screwdriver.
- Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow **4**.
- Replace the appropriate fuse » Fig. 207 on page 231.

Installing the storage compartment

- Pull in the storage compartment behind the brackets **A** » Fig. 208.
- Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **4**.
- Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow **3** with a screwdriver.
- Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Close the storage compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel – RHD

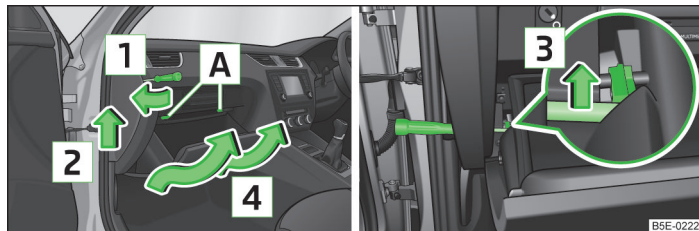


Fig. 208 Storage compartment on the front passenger's side: RHD

Fuse assignment in the dash panel

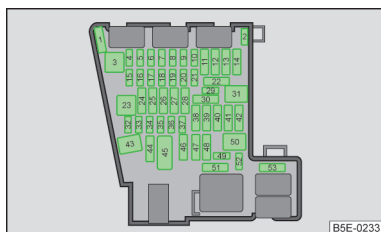


Fig. 209
Schematic representation of the fuse box



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  on page 230.

No.	Power consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Not assigned
5	Data bus control unit
6	Alarm sensor
7	Control unit for the air conditioning system, heating, receiver for remote control for the auxiliary heating, selector lever for the automatic gearbox, relay for the rear window heater, replay for the windscreen heater
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic socket
9	Haldex clutch
10	Touchscreen
11	Heated rear seats
12	Radio
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning, heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Signal amplifier for telephone, telephone preinstallation
17	Instrument cluster

No.	Power consumer
18	Not assigned
19	KESY control unit
20	Steering wheel module
21	Not assigned
22	Luggage compartment door opening
23	Light - right
24	Panorama roof
25	Control unit for central locking front door right, power windows - left
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Towing device
29	Not assigned
30	Not assigned
31	Headlight - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag
34	TCS button, ESC, tyre control display, pressure sensor for air-conditioning, reverse light switch, dimming rear view mirror, START-STOP button, telephone preinstallation, control for heating of rear seats, sensor for air-conditioning, 230 V power socket, sound actuator
35	Headlight, headlamp beam adjustment, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Towing device
39	Control unit for central locking front door - right, power windows - front and rear right
40	12-Volt power socket
41	CNG relay
42	Control unit for central locking rear door - left, right, headlight cleaning system, windscreen wipers
43	Visor for gas discharge bulbs, interior lighting
44	Towing device

No.	Power consumer
45	Control unit for control of seat adjustment
46	230-Volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Not assigned
49	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
50	Not assigned
51	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
52	Not assigned
53	Relay for rear window heater



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 230.

Replacing fuses

- Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 210.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Replace the appropriate fuse.
- Place the cover on top of the fusebox.
- Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 230.

Fuses in the engine compartment

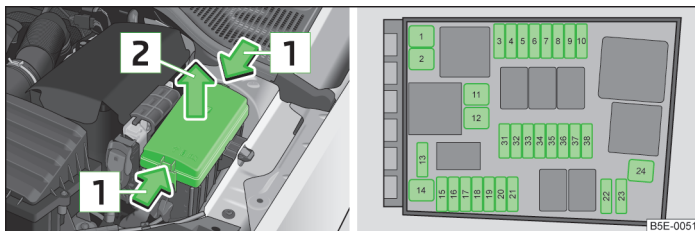


Fig. 210 Fuse box cover in engine compartment/Schematic diagram of the fuse box

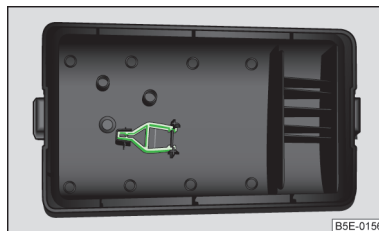


Fig. 211
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment: Plastic clip for fuses

No.	Power consumer
F1	Control unit for ESC
F2	Control unit for ESC, ABS
F3	Engine control unit
F4	Engine control unit, relay for electric auxiliary heating
F5	Engine components
F6	Brake sensor, engine components
F7	Coolant pump, engine components
F8	Lambda probe
F9	Ignition, control unit for glow plug system, engine components
F10	Control unit for fuel pump, ignition
F11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
F12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
F13	Control unit for automatic gearbox
F14	Windscreen heater - left
F15	Horn
F16	Ignition, fuel pump
F17	Control unit for ABS, ESC, engine control unit
F18	Data bus control unit
F19	Windscreen wipers

No.	Power consumer
F20	Alarm
F21	ABS
F22	Engine control unit
F23	Starter
F24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
F31	Not assigned
F32	Not assigned
F33	Not assigned
F34	Windscreen heater - right
F35	Not assigned
F36	Not assigned
F37	Control unit for auxiliary heating
F38	Not assigned

Light bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Headlights	235
Replacing bulb for low beam	235
Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights	235
Replacing bulb for daytime running lights and parking light	236
Replacing bulb for fog light	236
Replacing bulb for licence plate light	237
Rear light (Octavia)	237
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia)	238
Rear light (Octavia Estate)	239
Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia Estate)	239

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, if uncertain, we recommend that bulbs are replaced by a ŠKODA specialist garage or other expert help is sought.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
- A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 193](#).
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required - risk of death!
- The relevant lamp must always be switched off before a light bulb is replaced.

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other light bulbs should be changed by a ŠKODA specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs be always carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend that the headlight settings are checked by a ŠKODA specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main or low beam, or the fog lights.
- Gas discharge bulbs and LED diodes are replaced by a ŠKODA specialist garage.

Headlights

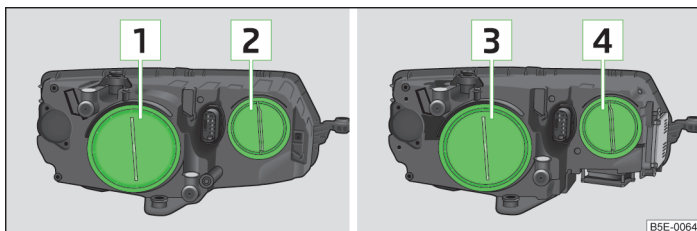


Fig. 212 Bulb arrangement: Headlight with halogen bulb/with Xenon bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 234.

Headlight with halogen bulb

- Low beam
- Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light

Headlights with Xenon light

- Xenon gas discharge bulbs
- Daytime running and parking light

Replacing bulb for low beam

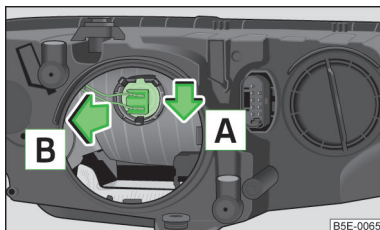


Fig. 213
Halogen headlight: Changing the bulb for the low beam



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 234.

- Remove the rubber cover » Fig. 212 on page 235.
- Turn the connector with the bulb in downwards in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 213 and remove it in the direction of the arrow .
- Remove the connector.
- Insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the bulb fit in the recesses of the reflector.
- Fit the connector.
- Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing bulb for main beam and daytime running lights

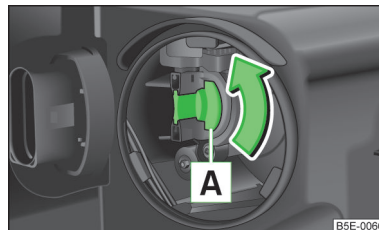


Fig. 214
Halogen headlight: Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 234.

- Remove the rubber cover » Fig. 212 on page 235.
- Turn the bulb holder » Fig. 214 **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove.
- Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
- Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing bulb for daytime running lights and parking light

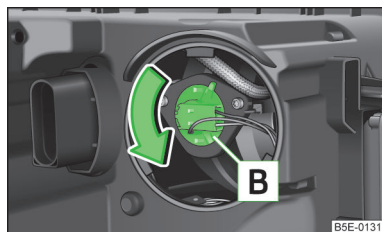


Fig. 215
Headlights with Xenon light:
Changing the bulb for daytime
running lights and parking light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 234.

- Remove the rubber cover **[4]** » Fig. 212 on page 235.
- Turn the bulb holder **[B]** » Fig. 215 **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove.
- Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
- Insert the rubber cover.

Replacing bulb for fog light

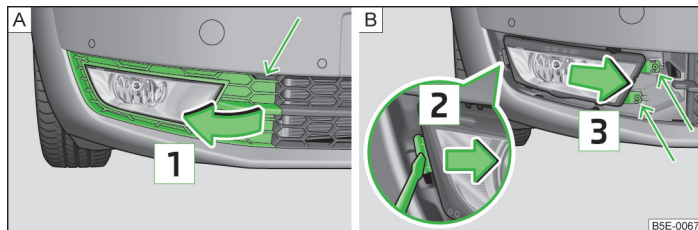


Fig. 216 Front bumper: Remove the protective grille/fog light

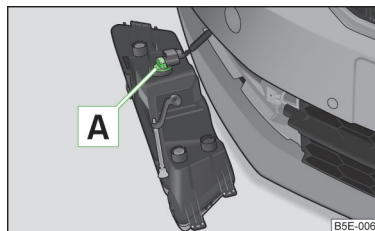


Fig. 217
Replacing the light bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 234.

Removing the protective grille

- Release the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 216 - **[A]** using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 215, *Car tool kit*.
- Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow **[1]** » Fig. 216.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the fog lamp » Fig. 216 - **[B]**.
- Unlock the fuse in the direction of the arrow **[2]** with the screwdriver.
- Remove the headlight in the direction of the arrow **[3]**.
- Remove the connector.
- Turn the bulb holder **[A]** » Fig. 217 in an **anti-clockwise** direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn in a **clockwise** direction as far as the stop.
- Fit the connector.
- Replace the fog lamp by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow **[3]** » Fig. 216 and tighten.
- Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing bulb for licence plate light

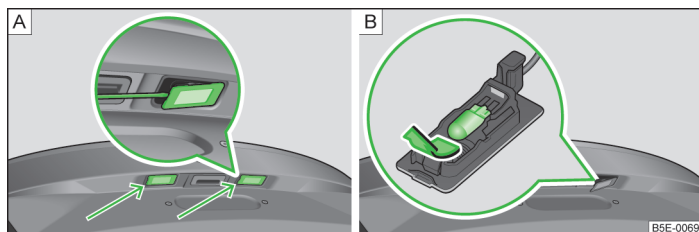


Fig. 218 Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 234.

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Insert a slotted screwdriver at the location indicated by the arrow » Fig. 218 - [A], press it in lightly, and unlatch the springs.
- Remove the lamp.
- Pull the faulty bulb out of the holder in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 218 - [B].
- Insert a new bulb into the holder.
- Replace the lamp and lightly press it until the spring latches.

Rear light (Octavia)

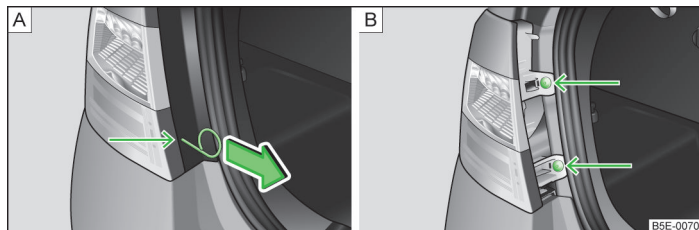


Fig. 219 Remove cover/light

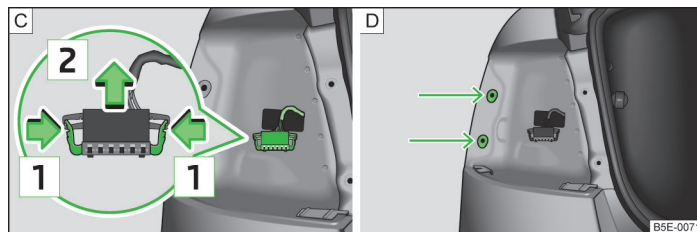


Fig. 220 Installing the lamp connector/lamp



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 234.

Removing

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 215, *Car tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 219 - [A].
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 219 - [A].
- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit » Fig. 219 - [B] to unscrew the lamp.
- Grip the tail lamp assembly and carefully remove it by pulling vertically to the direction of travel with loosening movements.
- Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 220 - [C].
- Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow [2].

Install

- Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
- Insert the light vertically into the mounts on the bodywork » Fig. 220 - [D].
- Carefully press the tail lamp assembly into the bodywork so that the bolts [1] » Fig. 221 on page 238 on the light latch with the mounts in the body » **!**.

Be careful not to pinch the cable bundle between the bodywork and light.

- Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
- Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle is not pinched when re-installing it between the bodywork and the light – risk of damage to the electric installation and water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle was not pinched, we recommend you have the connection to the light checked by a ŠKODA partner.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia)

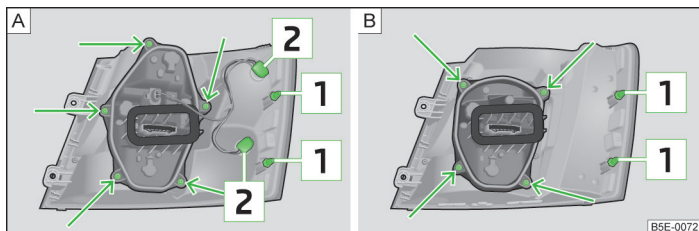


Fig. 221 Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes

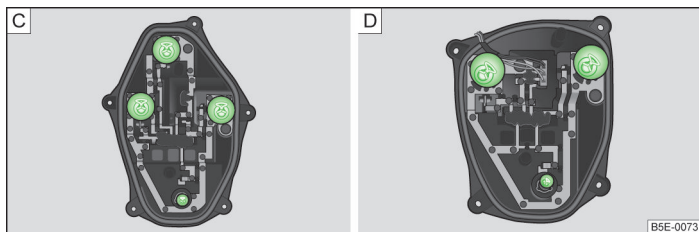


Fig. 222 Inner part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings **!** on page 234.

Outer part of the light

- Turn the bulb holder **2** » Fig. 221 **anti-clockwise** remove it from the lamp housing.
- Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.

Inner part of the light

- Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 221 - **A** or **B** with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the tail light assembly.
- Turn the bulb holder **anti-clockwise** up to the stop and remove it from the lamp housing » Fig. 221 - **C** or **D**.
- Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop.
- Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.
- Screw on the lamp holder carefully.

Rear light (Octavia Estate)

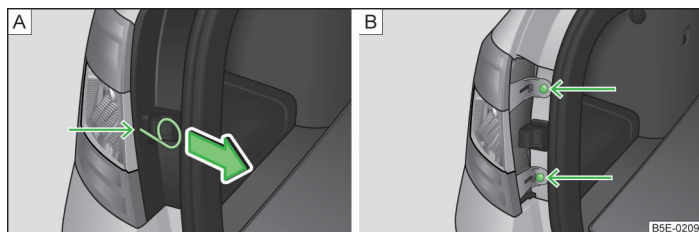


Fig. 223 Remove cover/light

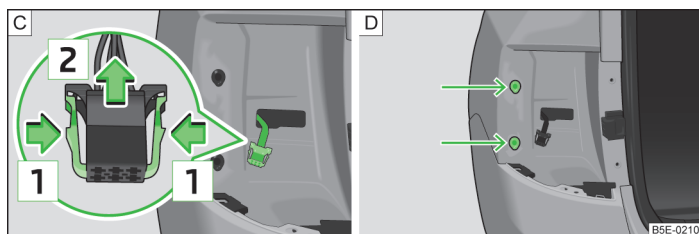


Fig. 224 Installing the lamp connector/lamp

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 234.

Removing

- Open the luggage compartment lid.
- Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 215, *Car tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 223 - [A].
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 223 - [A].
- Use the screwdriver from the tool kit » Fig. 223 - [B] to unscrew the lamp.
- Grip the tail lamp assembly and carefully remove it by pulling vertically to the direction of travel with loosening movements.
- Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 224 - [C].

- Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow [2].

Install

- Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
- Insert the light vertically into the mounts on the bodywork » Fig. 224 - [D].
- Carefully press the tail lamp assembly into the bodywork so that the bolts [1] » Fig. 225 on page 239 on the light latch with the mounts in the body » .

Be careful not to pinch the cable bundle between the bodywork and light.

- Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.
- Ensure that the cover engages firmly.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle is not pinched when re-installing it between the bodywork and the light - risk of damage to the electric installation and water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle was not pinched, we recommend you have the connection to the light checked by a ŠKODA partner.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Octavia Estate)

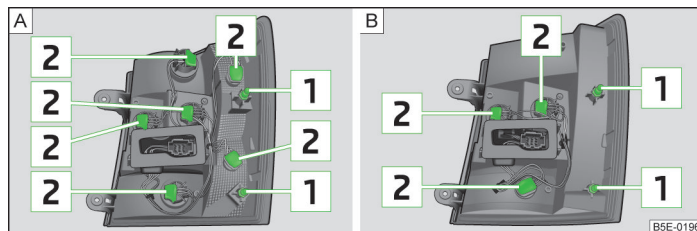


Fig. 225 Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings on page 234.

Outer part of the light

- Turn the bulb holder [2] » Fig. 225 anti-clockwise remove it from the lamp housing.

- Replace the bulb, insert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in a **clockwise** direction to the stop. ■

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle identification data	241
Dimensions	243
Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type	244

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual. It can be found in the official vehicle registration documents or you can find out from a ŠKODA Partner what engine the vehicle is fitted with.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

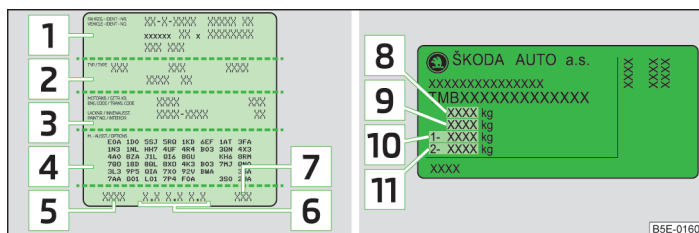


Fig. 226 Vehicle data sticker/type plate



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 241.

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 226 is located on the floor of the luggage compartment and is also stated in the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 2 Vehicle type
- 3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
- 4 Partial vehicle description
- 5 Operating weight (in kg)
- 6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) - intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
- 7 CO₂ emission levels - combined (in g/km)

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 226 is located on the lower part of the column between the front and rear doors on the driver's side.

The type plate lists the following weights:

- 8 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- 10 Maximum permissible front axle load
- 11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

The VIN can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Operating instructions for Infotainment*, chapter *Setting vehicle systems*.

Engine number

The engine number is stamped into the engine block.

Operating weight

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » .

The payload consists of the following components:

- Passengers
- All items of luggage and other loads
- Roof load including roof rack system
- Equipment not included in the operating weight
- Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 75 kg).

Fuel consumption according to the ECE standards and EU guidelines

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards standard urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and -120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.



WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!



Note

- If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle by contacting a ŠKODA Partner.
- Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values. ■

Dimensions



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 241.

Dimensions (mm)

		OCTAVIA	OCTAVIA ESTATE
Length		4659	
Width		1814	
Width including exterior mirror		2017	
Height	Basic dimension.	1461	1465
	Vehicles with a rough road package.	1476	1480
	Vehicles with a SPORT package.	1446	1450
Clearance	Basic dimension.	140	
	Vehicles with a rough road package.	155	
	Vehicles with a SPORT package.	125	
Wheel base	Basic dimension.	2686	
	Vehicles with the 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine.	2680	
Track gauge front/rear	Vehicles with the 1.2 l/63 kW TSI, 1.2 l/77 kW TSI and 1.6 l/77 kW TDI engine with 15" wheels.	1549/1520	
	Vehicles with the 1.4 l/103 kW TSI and 2.0 l/110 kW TDI engine with 16" wheels.	1543/1514	
	Vehicles with the 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine with 16" wheels.	1543/1512	

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type



First read and observe the introductory information given on page 241.

The specified values were obtained in accordance with rules and conditions that are set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data of motor vehicles.

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm ³)
63/4300-5300	160/1400-3500	4/1197

	OCTAVIA MG5	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG5
Top speed (km/h)	181	178
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	12.0	12.2
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100 ^{a)} /1300 ^{b)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	620

^{a)} Uphills up to 12 %.

^{b)} Uphills up to 8 %.

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm ³)
77/4500-5500	175/1400-4000	4/1197

	OCTAVIA MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	196	193
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	10.3	10.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1300 ^{b)} /1500 ^{c)}	
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	620

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Uphills up to 12 %.

^{c)} Uphills up to 8 %.

1.4 ltr./103 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm ³)
103/4500-6000	250/1500-3500	4/1395

	OCTAVIA MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA DSG7	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG7
Top speed (km/h)	215	215	212	212
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.5	8.5	8.6
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	620	630	630	640

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Uphills up to 12 %.

^{c)} Uphills up to 8 %.

1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm ³)
132/5100-6200	250/1250-5000	4/1798

	OCTAVIA MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG7 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	231	231	229	229
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	7.3	7.4	7.4	7.5
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	650	660	660	670

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Uphills up to 12 %.

^{c)} Uphills up to 8 %.

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm ³)
77/3000-4000	250/1500-2750	4/1598

	OCTAVIA MG5 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA DSG7 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG5 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG7 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	194	194	191	191
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	10.8	10.9	11.0	11.1
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1500 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	650	650	660	660

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Uphills up to 12 %.

^{c)} Uphills up to 8 %.

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Number of cylinders/Displacement (cm ³)
110/3500-4000	320/1750-3000	4/1968

	OCTAVIA MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA DSG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE MG6 ^{a)}	OCTAVIA ESTATE DSG6 ^{a)}
Top speed (km/h)	218	215	216	213
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)	8.5	8.6	8.6	8.7
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1600 ^{b)} /1800 ^{c)}			
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	660	670	670	680

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a Green-tec package.

^{b)} Uphills up to 12 %.

^{c)} Uphills up to 8 %.

Index

A

ABS	
Function	132
Warning light	15
Accessories	188
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	50
Adjusting	
Exterior mirrors	61
Head restraints	65
Interior mirror	61
Seats	63
Adjusting the seats	63, 159
Adjustment	
Headlight beam	48
Aerial	183
see Radio reception	185
AFS	50
Airbag	167
Deactivating	172
Deployment	167
Front airbag	169
Head airbag	171
Knee airbag	170
Modifications and impairments of the airbag system	189
Side airbag	170
Switching off front passenger airbag	173
Warning light	16
Airbag system	167
Air conditioning system	
Air outlets	96
Climatronic	101
Manual air conditioning system	99
Air outlets	96

Alarm	
Switching off	35
Triggering	35
Anti-theft alarm system	
Activating/deactivating	36
Trailer	157
Antilock Braking System	132
Armrest	
Front	68
rear	68
Ashtray	73
Assistance systems	
Cruise control system	139
Assist system	
ABS	132
Assist systems	131
ABS	15
Driving mode	143
EDL	133
ESC	15, 131
Headlight assist	51
Lane Assist	146
Park assist	135
Parking aid	133
ProActive passenger protection	145
START-STOP	141
TCS	14, 132
Auto-check control	12
Automatic driving lamp control	49
Automatic gearbox	
Kickdown	123
Malfunction	123
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	228
Selector lever lock	122
Starting-off and driving	123
Tiptronic	122
Using the selector lever	121
Warning light	13
Automatic load deactivation	205
Automatic transmission	120

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)	104
Auxiliary heating (parking heating and ventilation)	
Radio remote control	105
Setting	105
Switching on/off	105
Avoiding damage to your vehicle	129
Driving through water	129

B

Ball rod	
Checking proper attachment	154
installing	153
Ready position	153
removing	154
Battery	
Replace in the radio remote control of the parking heating	226
Replacing the remote control key	225
Battery cover	204
Belt tensioners	165
Bonnet	
Closing	195
Opening	195
Boot	
see Boot lid	37
Boot lid	
Automatic locking	38
Closing	37
Opening	37
Brake booster	119
Brake fluid	
Changing	202
Checking	201
Brake pads	
Warning light	17
Brakes	
Brake assist systems	131
Brake booster	119

Brake fluid	201	Properly fixing the ball rod	154	Storage compartments	70
Handbrake	119	Windscreen washer fluid	196	Useful equipment	70
Running in	125	Children and safety	177	COMING HOME	53
Warning light	14	Child safety		Communication	
Braking		Side airbag	179	Multimedia	109
Information for braking	118	Child safety lock	34	Phone Box	108
Breakdown kit	220	Child safety seat		Compartments	70
Break recommendation		Use of child safety seats	179	Component protection	189
see Fatigue detection	151	Child seat		Computer	
Bulbs		Classification	179	see Multifunction display	25
Warning icon	20	ISOFIX	180	Control icons	
Button in the driver's door		on the front passenger seat	178	see Warning icons	18
Electrical power windows	41	TOP TETHER	181	Convenience consumers	127
		Use of ISOFIX child seats	180	Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof (Ocotavia Estate)	46
				Convenience operation of sliding/tilting roof (Ocotavia)	44
C		Chrome parts		Coolant	
Car computer		refer to Taking care of your vehicle	184	Checking	200
see Multifunction display	25	Cigarette lighter	73	Refilling	201
Cargo element	86	Cleaning	182	Temperature display	10
Car jack	215	Alcantara	187	Warning icon	19
Carrier	92	Artificial leather	187	Counter for distance driven	11
Car tool kit	215	Cloths	187	Cruise control system	139
Cavity protection	187	Headlight lenses	185	Activating/deactivating	140
Central locking button	33	Material coverings	187	Changing the stored speed	140
Changes	188	Natural leather	187	Storing and maintaining speed	140
Changing		Plastic parts	185	Switching off temporarily	140
Brake fluid	202	Wheels	186	Warning light	18
Engine oil	199	Climatronic	101	Cup holder	72
Wheels	216	Automatic mode	102		
Changing a wheel		Control elements	101	D	
Preparations	216	Controlling blower	103	Daytime running lights	48
Remove and attaching a wheel	217	Cooling system	102	De-icing the windscreen and rear window	56
Subsequent steps	217	Defrosting windscreen	104	Deactivating an airbag	172
Charging a vehicle battery	204	Recirculation	103	Delayed locking of the boot lid	
Checking		Setting temperature	102	see Boot lid	38
Battery electrolyte level	204	Clock	11	Diesel	
Brake fluid	201	Clothes hook	76	refer to Fuel	193
Coolant level	200	Cockpit			
Engine oil	198	Ashtray	73		
Oil level	198	Cigarette lighter	73		
		General view	7		
		Light	54		

Diesel fuel	
Operation in winter	193
Diesel particle filter	21
Digital clock	11
Dipstick	198
Display	9
Coolant temperature	10
Fuel level	10
Distance driven	11
Door	
Child safety lock	34
Closing	34
Emergency locking the driver's door	227
opening	34
Door locking	
Emergency	227
Doors	
Emergency locking	227
Door warning	24
Double hooks	82
Driving	
Abroad	130
Emissions	241
Fuel consumption	241
Driving mode	143
Driving through water	129
Dynamic steering response (DSR)	131

E

Eco mode	145
Economical driving	125
Ballast	127
Driving at full throttle	126
Idling	126
Looking ahead	125
Regular maintenance	128
Short distances	127
Tyre inflation pressure	127

Economic driving	
Looking ahead	126
Eco tips	24
EDL	133
Electrical power windows	43
Button in the driver's door	41, 42
Button in the rear doors	42
Operational faults	43
Electric boot lid	
Acoustic signals	40
Adjusting the top lid position	40
Force limiter	38
Malfunctions	40
Manual operation	38
Operating	39
Electric boot lit	
Deleting the top lid position	40
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)	133
Electronic immobiliser	114
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	131
Emergency	
Automatic gearbox	228
Changing a wheel	216
Door locking	227
Hazard warning light system	53
Jump-starting	222
Locking the driver's door	227
Starting the engine - KESSY	118
Switching off the ignition - KESSY	118
Towing the using the towing device	225
Towing the vehicle	223
Tyre repair	219
Unlocking the boot lid	227
Unlocking the driver's door	227
Emergency equipment	
Car jack	215
Car tool kit	215
Fire extinguisher	215
First-aid kit	214
Warning triangle	214
Emissions	241

Engine	
Running in	124
Engine compartment	
Brake fluid	201
Coolant	200
Overview	196
Vehicle battery	202
Engine oil	
Capacity	198
Changing	199
Checking	198
Refilling	199
Specification	198
Warning icon	20
Entry lighting	56
Environment	125
Environmental compatibility	128
Environmentally friendly driving	125
EPC	
Warning light	16
ESC	
Function	131
Warning light	15
Exhaust inspection system	
Warning light	16

F

Fastening elements	81
Fatigue detection	151
Function	151
Information messages	151
Fire extinguisher	215
First-aid kit	214
Floor covering	
Fixing	83
Fog lights	52
Warning light	18
Fog lights with the CORNER function	52
Footmats	120

Force limiter	43
Foreign countries	
Driving abroad	130
Unleaded petrol	130
Front airbag	169
Front door warning light	56
Front interior light	54
Fuel	191
Diesel	193
Fuel gauge	10
refer to Fuel	191
Refuelling	191
Unleaded petrol	192
Warning icon	21
Fuel consumption	125
Fuses	
Colour coding	230
Fuse assignment in the dash panel	232
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment	233
Plastic clip	233

G

Gear	
Recommended gear	23
General view	
Cockpit	7
Glasses storage box	75
Glow plug system	
Warning light	16

H

Handbrake	119
Warning light	13
Hazard warning light system	53
Head airbag	171
Headlight assist	51
Warning icon	22
Headlight cleaning system	
Headlight cleaning system	59

Headlights	
Driving abroad	130
Headlight cleaning system	59
Replacing a bulb	235
Head restraint	65
Heater	
Exterior mirrors	61
Windscreen and rear window	56
Heating	
Defrosting windows	98
operating	97
Recirculated air mode	98
Seats	67
Hill Hold Control (HHC)	131
Hooks (Octavia Estate)	82
Horn	7
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)	131

I

Ice warning	
Warning icon	22
Ignition	
see Ignition lock	114
Ignition lock	114
Immobiliser	114
Individual mode	145
Individual settings	
Locking	32
Unlocking	32
Inertia reel	165
Information display	24
Information message	
see KESSY	35
Information system	23
Door warning	24
Eco tips	24
Information display	24
Information on the display	23, 141
Multifunction display	25

Outside temperature	23
Recommended gear	23
Instrument cluster	8
Auto-check control	12
Counter for distance driven	11
Display	9
Fuel gauge	10
Overview	8
Revolutions counter	9
see Instrument cluster	8
Service interval	11
Speedometer	9
Temperature display	10
Viewing the charge level of the vehicle battery	11
Warning icons	18
Warning lights	12
Interior monitor	36
ISOFIX	180

J

Jacking points	
Raise vehicle	218
Jump-starting	222

K

KESSY	
Information message	35
Locking	34
Starting the engine	117
Switching off the engine	117
Switching off the ignition	117
Switching on the ignition	117
Unlocking	34
Unlocking/locking the steering	116
Key	
Locking	30
Starting the engine	114
Stopping the engine	115
Unlocking	30
Knee airbag	170

L		
Lane Assist	146	
Explanations of situations	148	
Function	147	
Information messages	148	
Warning light	17	
LEAVING HOME	53	
Lever		
Main beam	49	
Turn signal	49	
Windscreen wipers	59	
Light		
Tourist light	50	
Light bulbs		
Rear light (Octavia Estate)	239	
Rear light (Octavia)	237	
Replacing	234	
Lighting		
Luggage compartment	79	
Lights	47	
Adaptive headlights (AFS)	50	
Automatic driving lamp control	49	
Bulb replacement	234	
Cockpit	54	
COMING HOME/LEAVING HOME	53	
Daytime running lights	48	
Fog lights	52	
Fog lights with the CORNER function	52	
Hazard warning light system	53	
Headlight beam adjustment	48	
Headlight flasher	49	
Low beam	48	
Main beam	49	
Parking light	54	
Rear fog light	52	
Side lights	48	
Switching on/off	48	
Turn signal	49	
Warning lights	12	
Lights on/off	48	
Loads	241	
Locking		
Individual settings	32	
KESSY	31	
Key	30	
Remote control	31	
Vehicle key	30	
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside	33	
Low beam	48	
Luggage compartment		
Compartment with cargo element	86	
Cover	84	
Emergency unlocking	227	
Fastening elements	81	
Fixing floor covering	83	
Fixing nets	81	
Foldable hooks (Octavia Estate)	82	
Folding double hooks	82	
Lighting	79	
Luggage net	83	
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)	88	
Roll-up luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)	85	
Storage box	87	
Storage compartments under the floor covering	87	
Stowing roll-up luggage compartment cover	85	
Stowing roof racks	85	
Unlocking the boot lid	227	
Variable loading floor	88	
luggage compartment cover	84	
Luggage compartment cover (Octavia Estate)	85	
Luggage net	83	
M		
Main beam	49	
Warning light	18	
Maintenance	128	
Manual air conditioning		
Control elements	99	
Recirculated air mode	100	
Setting	100	
Manual shifting of gears		
see Shifting of gears	120	
Memory	27	
Mirrors		
Exterior mirrors	61	
Interior mirror	61	
Vanity	57	
Mobile phone	107	
Modes of the automatic gearbox	121	
Multicollision brake	131	
Multifunction box (Octavia Estate)	88	
Multifunction display		
Functions	25	
Information	25	
Memory	27	
Select information	26	
Multifunction steering wheel	109	
Multimedia	109	
AUX	110	
MEDIA IN	110	
Multifunction steering wheel	109	
USB	110	
N		
Net partition	90	
Behind the front seats	92	
Behind the rear seats	91	
Removing and installing the housing	92	
Nets	81	
Normal mode	144	
O		
Oil		
see Engine oil	198	

On-board computer	
see Multifunction display	25
Operation in winter	
De-icing windows	185
Diesel fuel	193
Vehicle battery	204
Outside temperature	23
Overview	
Engine compartment	196
Warning icons	18
Warning lights	12

P

Paint	
see Paint damage	184
Paint damage	184
Park assist	135
Finding a parking space	136
Information messages	138
Parking	137
Parking	
Automatic brake assist	138
Manoeuvring out of a parallel parking space	137
Park assist	135
Parking aid	133
Parking aid	133
Automatic system activation when moving forward	135
Function	134
Road display	135
Parking ticket holder	71
Parking vehicle	35
Passive safety	
Before setting off	158
Driving safety	159
Safety equipment	158
Passive Safety	158
Pedals	120

Pedestrian protection system	175
Activating	175
Warning light	16
Petrol	
refer to Fuel	192
Phone Box	108
Polishing the paintwork	
refer to Taking care of your vehicle	184
Power sockets	
12 V	74
230 V	77
Power steering	113
Power windows	
Button in the front passenger door	42
Preservation	
refer to Taking care of your vehicle	184
ProActive passenger protection	145
Function	145
Information messages	146
Proper seated position	159
Driver	160
Front passenger	160
Instructions	161
Rear seats	160

R

Radiator fan	196
Radio reception	
Aerial	185
Functional fault	185
Radio remote control	
Auxiliary heating (parking heating)	105
Raise vehicle	218
Rear fog light	52
Warning light	16
Rear interior light	55
Rear mirror	60
Exterior mirrors	61
Interior mirror	61

Rear window - heater	56
Recirculated air mode	
Climatronic	103
manual air conditioning	100
Recommended gear	23
Refilling	
Coolant	201
Engine oil	199
Refuelling	191
Fuel	191
Remote control	
Locking	31
Replacing the battery	225
Synchronisation process	226
Unlocking	31
Remote control key	
Replacing the battery	225
Removable through-loading bag	79
Repairs and technical modifications	189
Replacement of parts	188
replacing	
Vehicle battery	204
Replacing	
Bulb for daytime running lights and parking light	236
Bulb for fog light	236
Bulb for licence plate light	237
Bulb for low beam	235
Bulb for main beam and daytime running lights	235
Bulb in rear light (Octavia Estate)	239
Bulb in rear light (Octavia)	238
Fuses - engine compartment	233
Fuses - LHD	231
Fuses - RHD	231
Light bulbs	234
Rear window wiper blade	229
Windscreen wiper blades	228
Replenishing	
Windscreen washer fluid	196
Revolutions counter	9
Rims	207

Roof luggage rack			
Attachment points	93	Manual adjustment	64
Roof rack system	92	Memory	66
Roof load	94	Seat backrests	69
Running-in		Storing in memory of remote control key	66
the first 1500 km	124	Seats and useful equipment	63
Running in		Adjusting the seats	63
Brake pads	125	see automatic gearbox	
Engine	124	Manual shifting of gears on the multifunction steering wheel	122
Tyres	125	Selecting driving mode	144
S			
Safe securing system	32	Selector lever	
Safety	158	see Using the selector lever	121
Child safety	177	Selector lever lock	
Child safety seats	177	Warning light	18
Head restraints	65	Service display	11
ISOFIX	180	Setting	
Proper seated position	159	Auxiliary heating (parking heating and ventilation)	105
TOP TETHER	181	Manual air conditioning	100
Saving electrical energy	125	Positions of the variable loading floor	89
Seat belt		Steering wheel	113
Warning icon	19	Setting the clock	11
Warning light	14	Shifting gears	
Seat belt height adjuster	165	Driving and saving energy	126
Seat belts		Shifting of gears	
Belt tensioners	165	Gearshift lever	120
Cleaning	188	Side airbag	170
fastening and unfastening	164	Side lights	48
Height adjustment	165	Sliding/tilting roof	
Seatbelts		Closing the sun screen (Octavia Estate)	46
Inertia reels	165	Closing (Octavia Estate)	45
Seat belts		Closing (Octavia)	44
The physical principle of a frontal collision	163	Opening/closing the sun screen (Octavia Estate)	46
Seat features	67	Opening and tilting (Octavia Estate)	45
Seats		Opening and tilting (Octavia)	44
Electric adjustment	64	Operation (Octavia Estate)	45
Folding front passenger seat	68	Operation (Octavia)	44
Head restraints	65	Snow chains	213
Heating	67	Spare wheel	211
		Speedometer	9
			9
		Speed symbol	
		see Wheels	210
		Sport mode	144
		START-STOP	141
		Manually activating/deactivating the system	143
		Operating conditions of the system	142
		Starting/shutting down the engine	142
		Warning icon	22
		Starting the engine	
		Jump-starting	222
		Key	114
		see KESSY	117
		START STOP	
		Information messages	143
		Jump-starting	223
		Steering force assistance	113
		Steering wheel	113
		Stopping the engine	
		Key	115
		Storage	70
		Storage box	87
		Storage compartments	70
		Storing skis	78
		Sun screen	57
		Sun visors	57
		Switching off the engine	
		see KESSY	117
		Switching off the ignition	
		see KESSY	117
		Switching on the ignition	
		see KESSY	117
		T	
		Taking care of the vehicle	
		Material coverings	187
		Natural leather	187
		Seat belts	188

Taking care of your vehicle	182	Trailer	152, 155	Unlocking and locking	29
Automatic car wash system	183	13-pin power socket	156	Unlocking and locking the steering	
Chrome parts	184	driving with a trailer	156	see KESSY	116
Cleaning the wheels	186	loading	155	Useful equipment	70
Door lock cylinders	186	Safety eye	156	12-volt power socket	74
Headlight lenses	185	Trailer stabilisation	157	230-volt power socket	77
High-pressure cleaner	184	Transport		Ashtray	73
Plastic parts	185	Luggage compartment	79	Cigarette lighter	73
Polishing the paintwork	184	Roof rack system	92	Clothes hook	76
Preservation	184	Transporting children safely	177	Cup holder	72
Rubber seals	186	Triangle	214	Glasses storage box	75
Washing	183	Turn signal	49	Holder for reflective vest	72
Washing by hand	183	Turn signal system		Map pocket on the front seats	77
Wash system	183	Warning light	17	Multimedia holder	74
TCS		Two-way radio systems	107	Parking ticket holder	71
Function	132	Type plate	241	Removable through-loading bag	79
Warning light	14, 15	Tyre		Seat backrest with through-loading channel	78
Technical data	241	see Wheels	209	Storage compartment in the front centre console	72
Through-loading bag	79	Tyre control display		Storage compartment in the rear centre console	77
Through-loading channel	78	Calibration	210	Storage compartment on the driver's side	71, 75
Tiptronic	122	Tyre inflation pressure		Storage compartments in the doors	71
Tool kit	215	Warning light	17	Storage compartment under the front armrest	75
TOP TETHER	181	Tyre load-bearing capacity		Storage compartment under the front passenger's seat	76
Towing	223	see Wheels	209	Using the selector lever	121
Towing a trailer	152	Tyre repair			
Towing device		Preparations	220	V	
Description	152	Pressure check	221	Variable loading floor	88
Drawbar load	152	Sealing and inflating the tyre	221	Dividing the luggage compartment	90
Operation and maintenance	155	Tyres	207	Folding up	90
Towing eye		New	209	Position change	89
front	224	U		Vehicle battery	
Rear	224	Underbody protection	186	Automatic load deactivation	205
Towing protection	36	Unlocking		Charge level indicator	11
Traction Control System (TCS)	132	Individual settings	32	charging	204
Traffic sign recognition	149	KESSY	31	Checking the electrolyte level	204
Function	150	Key	30	Cover	204
Information messages	150	Remote control	31	Disconnecting and reconnecting	205
Traffic signs		Vehicle key	30	Operation in winter	204
see Traffic sign recognition	149			replacing	204

Safety instructions	202
Warning icon	19
Vehicle care	
Alcantara	187
Artificial leather	187
Cloths	187
Vehicle condition	
see Auto-check control	12
Vehicle data sticker	241
Vehicle dimensions	243
Vehicle height	243
vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number)	241
Vehicle key	
locking	30
unlocking	30
Vehicle length	243
Vehicle width	243
Vest	
Holder for reflective vest	72
Visibility	56
Visors	
see Sun screen	57
see Sun visors	57

W

Warning against excessive speeds	27
Warning icons	18
Warning light	
Power steering	14
Warning lights	12
Warning symbols	
see Warning lights	12
Warning triangle	214
Washing	182
Automatic car wash system	183
by hand	183
Chrome parts	184
High-pressure cleaner	184

Water	
Driving through	129
Weights	241
Wheel bolts	
Anti-theft wheel bolt	219
Caps	212
Loosening and tightening	218
Wheels	
Bolts	212
Changing	216
Changing wheels	208
Full trim	212
General information	207
Inflation pressure	208
Life of tyres	208
Load index	209
Low-profile tyres	210
Sizes	208
Snow chains	213
Spare wheel	211
Speed symbol	210
Storing wheels	208
Tyre inflation pressure	208
Tyre sizes	208
Tyre wear indicator	208
Wear indicator	208
Winter tyres	213
Window convenience operation	43
Windows	
De-icing	185
See Electrical power windows	41
Window wiper	
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	229
Windscreen	
Heater	56
see Radio reception	185
Windscreen washer fluid	
Checking	196
Replenishing	196
Warning icon	21
Winter	196

Windscreen washers	
Windscreen washers	59
Windscreen washer system	196
Windscreen wipers	
Operating	59
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	228
Windscreen washer fluid	196
Windscreen wipers and washers	58
Winter operation	
Snow chains	213
Winter tyres	
see Wheels	213

ŠKODA pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Certain items of equipment might only be installed at a later date (information provided by your local ŠKODA Partner) or are only offered in particular markets. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA.

ŠKODA expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2013

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked  below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.